PRINCIPIA LATINA.—Part I.



A

FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING

GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,

WITH VOCABULARIES.

For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.

By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,

EDITOR OF THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICTIONARIES.

TWENTIETH EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED,

WITH THE CASES ARRANGED BOTH AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS AND AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1876.

NOTICE TO THE EIGHTEENTH EDITION.



To meet the requirements of all Schools, the Cases of the Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, are arranged in this Edition both as in the ordinary Grammars and as in the Public School Latin Primer, together with the corresponding Exercises. The first thirty-six pages at the beginning of the book are therefore repeated, the only difference between them being the arrangement of the Cases. In this way the work can be used with equal advantage by those who prefer either the old or the modern arrangement.

The 'Smaller Latin Grammar' retains the ordinary arrangement of the Cases.

W. S.

PREFACE.

THE following work is the first of a short series which I have undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:—

I. The first part contains the Grammatical forms, with exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabularies to both parts are printed at the end of the second, and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are appended to them.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

The last edition was thoroughly revised, and various improvements were introduced. The rules for the Pronunciation of Latin were drawn up by the Rev. Dr. Abbott, Head Master of the City of London School. In the revision I was indebted for much valuable assistance to Mr. T. D. Hall, the joint-author with me of the 'Student's Latin Grammar,' and of the 'English-Latin Dictionary.'

W. S.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, AND PRONOUNS.

VERBS.

Part II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS.

I.—The Alphabet. Parts of Speech.

1. *Alphabet.*—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, which are in common use, and *eu*, *ei*, *ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae*, *oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (¯) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech.*—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

1. Substantive, or Noun.	3. Pronoun.	6. Preposition.
2. Adjective.	4. Verb.	7. Conjunction.
	5. Adverb.	8. Interjection.

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin mensă means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

II.—Pronunciation.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā	=	English	*a* in f*a*ther.
,,	ă	=	,,	*first a* in *a*way, or *a* in vill*a*.
,,	ē	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	ae	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	oe	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	ĕ	=	,,	*e* in m*e*n.
,,	ī	=	,,	*i* in mach*i*ne.
,,	ĭ	=	,,	*i* in p*i*ty.
,,	ō	=	,,	*o* in gl*o*ry.
,,	ŏ	=	,,	*o* in t*o*p.
,,	ū	=	,,	*u* in r*u*le.
,,	ŭ	=	,,	*u* in f*u*ll.
,,	au	=	,,	*ow* in p*ow*er.
,,	eu	=	,,	Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin ŭ (differs little from present pronunciation).
,,	ei	=	,,	Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from *ai* in pl*ai*n).

CONSONANTS.

Latin c, ch	=	English *k*.	
,, g	=	,,	*g* in *g*et.
,, s	=	,,	*s* in *s*in.
,, t (ratio)	=	,,	*t* in ca*t*, not *sh*, as in na*t*ion.
,, j	=	,,	*y* in *y*ard.
,, v	=	,,	*v*.
,, z, ph, th	=	,,	*z*, *ph*, *th*.

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in rose, *e.g.* 'rosa.'

III.—Substantives or Nouns.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine, Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	**ae**	**ī**	**ĭs**	**ūs**	**ĕī**
Gen. Plur.	**ā-rum**	**ō-rum**	**-um / ĭ-um**	**ŭ-um**	**ē-rum.**

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
A	**O**	**consonant** or **I**	**U**	**E**

IV.—The First or A Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in **ă**.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Mens-ă** (*fem.*)	*a table*	**Mens-ae,**	*tables*
Gen.	**Mens-ae,**	*of a table*	**Mens-ārum,**	*of tables*
Dat.	**Mens-ae,**	*to* or *for a table*	**Mens-īs,**	*to* or *for tables*
Acc.	**Mens-am,**	*a table*	**Mens-ās,**	*tables*
Voc.	**Mens-ă,**	*O table*	**Mens-ae,**	*O tables*
Abl.	**Mens-ā,**	*by, with,* or *from a table.*	**Mens-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from tables.*

Note.—**Fīliă**, *a daughter*; **dĕă**, *a goddess*; **ĕquă**, *a mare*; **ăsĭnă**, *a she-ass*; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in **ābŭs**: fīliābŭs, dĕābŭs, ĕquābŭs, ăsĭnābŭs, etc.

Gender.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, **naută**, *a sailor*.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, pŭellă currĭt, *the girl runs;* pŭellae currunt, *the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case: as, ăquĭlă ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.* NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.	Plural, 3 pers
Currĭt, (*he, she, it*) *runs.*	**Currunt,** (*they*) *run.*
Hăbĕt, (*he, she, it*) *has.*	**Hăbent,** (*they*) *have.*

EXERCISE I.

1. Filia currit. 2. Filiae currunt. 3. Regina coronam habet. 4. Puella coronam habet. 5. Filia pecuniam habet. 6. Femina pecuniam habet. 7. Roma portas habet. 8. Coloniae portas habent. 9. Puellae rosas habent. 10. Feminae rosas habent. 11. Columbae alas habent. 12. Insulae oras habent.

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To be," they are put in the same case: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă; *Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb "To be."

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă Eurōpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

Est, (*he*) *is.* **Sunt,** (*they*) *are.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—The Second or O Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in **ŭs** and **ĕr**, and of Neuter Nouns in **um.**

A. *Masculine.*

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Dŏmĭn-ŭs,**	*a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*lords*
Gen.	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*of a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ōrum,**	*of lords*
Dat.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*to* or *for a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*to* or *for lords*
Acc.	**Dŏmĭn-um,**	*a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ōs,**	*lords*
Voc.	**Dŏmĭn-ĕ,**	*O lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*O lords*
Abl.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from lords.*

2.

Nom.	**Măgistĕr,**	*a master*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*masters*
Gen.	**Măgistr-ī,**	*of a master*	**Măgistr-ōrum,**	*of masters*
Dat.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*to* or *for a master*	**Măgistr-īs,**	*to* or *for masters*
Acc.	**Măgistr-um,**	*a master*	**Măgistr-ōs,**	*masters*
Voc.	**Măgistĕr,**	*O master*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*O masters*
Abl.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a master.*	**Măgistr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from masters.*

3.

Nom.	**Puĕr,**	*a boy*	**Puĕr-ī,**	*boys*
Gen.	**Puĕr-ī,**	*of a boy*	**Puĕr-ōrum,**	*of boys*
Dat.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*to* or *for a boy*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*to* or *for boys*
Acc.	**Puĕr-um,**	*a boy*	**Puĕr-ōs,**	*boys*
Voc.	**Puĕr,**	*O boy*	**Puĕr-ī,**	*O boys*
Abl.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a boy.*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from boys.*

Note.—Proper Names in **ĭŭs** make **ī** in the Vocative, as, **Mercŭrĭŭs**, *Mercury, Voc.* **Mercŭrī**. Also the Vocative Singular of **fīlĭŭs**, *a son*, is **fīlī**, and of **gĕnĭŭs**, *a guardian deity*, is **gĕnī**.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in **ĭr**, namely, **vĭr**, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*). It is declined like **puĕr**:

4.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Vĭr,**	*a man*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*men*
Gen.	**Vĭr-ī,**	*of a man*	**Vĭr-ōrum,**	*of men*
Dat.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*to* or *for a man*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*to* or *for men*
Acc.	**Vĭr-um,**	*a man*	**Vĭr-ōs,**	*men*
Voc.	**Vĭr,**	*O man*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*O men*
Abl.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a man.*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from men.*

B. *Neuter.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Regn-um,**	*a kingdom*	**Regn-ă,**	*kingdoms*
Gen.	**Regn-ī,**	*of a kingdom*	**Regn-ōrum,**	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	**Regn-ō,**	*to* or *for a kingdom*	**Regn-īs,**	*to* or *for kingdoms*
Acc.	**Regn-um,**	*a kingdom*	**Regn-ă,**	*kingdoms*
Voc.	**Regn-um,**	*O kingdom*	**Regn-ă,**	*O kingdoms*
Abl.	**Regn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*	**Regn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

NOTE.—The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ŭs are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, mālŭs, *an apple-tree.*

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ŭs are Neuter: vīrŭs, *poison;* vulgŭs, *the multitude;* pĕlăgŭs, *the (open) sea.* They are used only in the Singular. (*N.B.* Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.)

ĕt, *and.*

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in ŭs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, măgistĕr cŏlumbam pŭĕrō dăt, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Dăt, ***(he, she, it) gives.*** **Dant,** ***(they) give.***

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in ĕr.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

Exercise V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Adjectives in ŭs, ă, um, or ĕr, (ĕ)ră, (ĕ)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	**F.**	**N.**	**M.**	**F.**	**N.**
Nom.	**Bŏn-ŭs**	**bŏn-ă**	**bŏn-um**	**Bŏn-ī**	**bŏn-ae**	**bŏn-ă**
Gen.	**Bŏn-ī**	**bŏn-ae**	**bŏn-ī**	**Bŏn-ōrum**	**bŏn-ārum**	**bŏn-ōrum**
Dat.	**Bŏn-ō**	**bŏn-ae**	**bŏn-ō**	**Bŏn-īs**	**bŏn-īs**	**bŏn-īs**
Acc.	**Bŏn-um**	**bŏn-am**	**bŏn-um**	**Bŏn-ōs**	**bŏn-ās**	**bŏn-ă**
Voc.	**Bŏn-ĕ**	**bŏn-ă**	**bŏn-um**	**Bŏn-ī**	**bŏn-ae**	**bŏn-ă**
Abl.	**Bŏn-ō**	**bŏn-ā**	**bŏn-ō**	**Bŏn-īs**	**bŏn-īs**	**bŏn-īs**

2.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Nĭg-ĕr**	**nigr-ă**	**nigr-um**	**Nigr-ī**	**nigr-ae**	**nigr-ă**
Gen.	**Nigr-ī**	**nigr-ae**	**nigr-ī**	**Nigr-ōrum**	**nigr-ārum**	**nigr-ōrum**
Dat.	**Nigr-ō**	**nigr-ae**	**nigr-ō**	**Nigr-īs**	**nigr-īs**	**nigr-īs**
Acc.	**Nigr-um**	**nigr-am**	**nigr-um**	**Nigr-ōs**	**nigr-ās**	**nigr-ă**
Voc.	**Nĭg-ĕr**	**nigr-ă**	**nigr-um**	**Nigr-ī**	**nigr-ae**	**nigr-ă**
Abl.	**Nigr-ō**	**nigr-ā**	**nigr-ō**	**Nigr-īs**	**nigr-īs**	**nigr-īs**

3.

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ī	Tĕnĕr-ōrum	tĕnĕr-ārum	tĕnĕr-ōrum
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-um	tĕnĕr-am	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ōs	tĕnĕr-ās	tĕnĕr-ă
Voc.	Tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-ă	tĕnĕr-um	Tĕnĕr-ī	tĕnĕr-ae	tĕnĕr-ă
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-ō	tĕnĕr-ā	tĕnĕr-ō	Tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs	tĕnĕr-īs

4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

Nom.	**Parvă mensă,**	*a small table*
Gen.	**Parvae mensae,**	*of a small table*
Dat.	**Parvae mensae,**	*to* or *for a small table*
Acc.	**Parvam mensam,**	*a small table*
Voc.	**Parvă mensă,**	*O small table*
Abl.	**Parvā mensā,**	*by, with,* or *from a small table.*

Plur.

Nom.	**Parvae mensae,**	*small tables*
Gen.	**Parvārum mensārum,**	*of small tables*
Dat.	**Parvīs mensīs,**	*to* or *for small tables*
Acc.	**Parvās mensās,**	*small tables*
Voc.	**Parvae mensae,**	*O small tables*
Abl.	**Parvīs mensīs,**	*by, with,* or *from small tables.*

5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

Nom.	**Bŏnŭs dŏmĭnŭs,**	*a good lord*
Gen.	**Bŏnī dŏmĭnī,**	*of a good lord*
Dat.	**Bŏnō dŏmĭnō,**	*to* or *for a good lord*
Acc.	**Bŏnum dŏmĭnum,**	*a good lord*
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ dŏmĭnĕ,**	*O good lord*
Abl.	**Bŏnō dŏmĭnō,**	*by, with,* or *from a good lord.*

Plur.

Nom.	**Bŏnī dŏmĭnī,**	*good lords*
Gen.	**Bŏnōrum dŏmĭnōrum,**	*of good lords*
Dat.	**Bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs,**	*to* or *for good lords*
Acc.	**Bŏnōs dŏmĭnōs,**	*good lords*
Voc.	**Bŏnī dŏmĭnī,**	*O good lords*
Abl.	**Bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs,**	*by, with,* or *from good lords.*

(B.)

Sing.

Nom.	**Bŏnŭs pŭĕr,**	*a good boy*
Gen.	**Bŏnī pŭĕrī,**	*of a good boy*
Dat.	**Bŏnō pŭĕrō,**	*to* or *for a good boy*
Acc.	**Bŏnum pŭĕrum,**	*a good boy*
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ pŭĕr,**	*O good boy*
Abl.	**Bŏnō pŭĕrō,**	*by, with,* or *from a good boy.*

Plur.

Nom.	**Bŏnī pŭĕrī,**	*good boys*
Gen.	**Bŏnōrum pŭĕrōrum,**	*of good boys*
Dat.	**Bŏnīs pŭĕrīs,**	*to* or *for good boys*
Acc.	**Bŏnōs pŭĕrōs,**	*good boys*
Voc.	**Bŏnī pŭĕrī,**	*O good boys*
Abl.	**Bŏnīs pŭĕrīs,**	*by, with,* or *from good boys.*

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

Nom.	**Magnum regnum,**	*a great kingdom*
Gen.	**Magnī regnī,**	*of a great kingdom*
Dat.	**Magnō regnō,**	*to* or *for a great kingdom*
Acc.	**Magnum regnum,**	*a great kingdom*
Voc.	**Magnum regnum,**	*O great kingdom*
Abl.	**Magnō regnō,**	*by, with,* or *from a great kingdom.*

Plur.

Nom.	**Magnă regnă,**	*great kingdoms*
Gen.	**Magnōrum regnōrum,**	*of great kingdoms*
Dat.	**Magnīs regnīs,**	*to* or *for great kingdoms*
Acc.	**Magnă regnă,**	*great kingdoms*
Voc.	**Magnă regnă,**	*O great kingdoms*
Abl.	**Magnīs regnīs,**	*by, with,* or *from great kingdoms.*

(B.)

Sing. only.

Nom.	**Magnum pĕlăgŭs,**	*the great sea*
Gen.	**Magnī pĕlăgī,**	*of the great sea*
Dat.	**Magnō pĕlăgō,**	*to* or *for the great sea*
Acc.	**Magnum pĕlăgŭs,**	*the great sea*
Voc.	**Magnum pĕlăgŭs,**	*the great sea*
Abl.	**Magnō pĕlăgō,**	*by, with,* or *from the great sea.*

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

Nom.	**Clārŭs naută,**	*a famous sailor*
Gen.	**Clārī nautae,**	*of a famous sailor*
Dat.	**Clārō nautae,**	*to* or *for a famous sailor*
Acc.	**Clārum nautam,**	*a famous sailor*
Voc.	**Clārĕ naută,**	*O famous sailor*
Abl.	**Clārō nautā,**	*by, with,* or *from a famous sailor.*

Plur.

Nom.	**Clārī nautae,**	*famous sailors*
Gen.	**Clārōrum nautārum,**	*of famous sailors*
Dat.	**Clārīs nautīs,**	*to* or *for famous sailors*
Acc.	**Clārōs nautās,**	*famous sailors*
Voc.	**Clārī nautae,**	*O famous sailors*
Abl.	**Clārīs nautīs,**	*by, with,* or *from famous sailors.*

RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

EXERCISE VI.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—The Third or Consonant and I Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or i.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Nouns.*

I. Stems ending in a Consonant.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p*, *b*, *m*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Trăb-s** (*f.*),	*a beam*	**Trăb-ēs,**	*beams*
Gen.	**Trăb-ĭs,**	*of a beam*	**Trăb-um,**	*of beams*
Dat.	**Trăb-ī,**	*to* or *for a beam*	**Trăb-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for beams*
Acc.	**Trăb-em,**	*a beam*	**Trăb-ēs,**	*beams*
Voc.	**Trăb-s,**	*O beam*	**Trăb-ēs,**	*O beams*
Abl.	**Trăb-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a beam.*	**Trăb-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from beams.*

Nom.	**Princep-s** (*c.*),	*a chief*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs*
Gen.	**Princĭp-ĭs,**	*of a chief*	**Princĭp-um,**	*of chiefs*
Dat.	**Princĭp-ī,**	*to* or *for a chief*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for chiefs*
Acc.	**Princĭp-em,**	*a chief*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs*
Voc.	**Princep-s,**	*O chief*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*O chiefs*
Abl.	**Princĭp-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a chief.*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from chiefs.*

3.

Nom.	**Hiĕm-s** (*f.*),	*winter*	**Hiĕm-ēs,**	*winters*
Gen.	**Hiĕm-ĭs,**	*of winter*	**Hiĕm-um,**	*of winters*
Dat.	**Hiĕm-ī,**	*to* or *for winter*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for winters*
Acc.	**Hiĕm-em,**	*winter*	**Hiĕm-ēs,**	*winters*
Voc.	**Hiĕm-s,**	*O winter*	**Hiĕm-ēs,**	*O winters*
Abl.	**Hiĕm-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from winter.*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from winters.*

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c*, *g*. Note.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *x*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Dux** (*c.*),	*a leader*	**Dŭc-ēs,**	*leaders*
Gen.	**Dŭc-ĭs,**	*of a leader*	**Dŭc-um,**	*of leaders*
Dat.	**Dŭc-ī,**	*to* or *for a leader*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for leaders*
Acc.	**Dŭc-em,**	*a leader*	**Dŭc-ēs,**	*leaders*
Voc.	**Dux,**	*O leader*	**Dŭc-ēs,**	*O leaders*
Abl.	**Dŭc-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a leader.*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from leaders.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Lex** (*f.*),	*a law*	**Lēg-ēs,**	*laws*
Gen.	**Lēg-ĭs,**	*of a law*	**Lēg-um,**	*of laws*
Dat.	**Lēg-ī,**	*to* or *for a law*	**Lēg-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for laws*
Acc.	**Lēg-em,**	*a law*	**Lēg-ēs,**	*laws*
Voc.	**Lex,**	*O law*	**Lēg-ēs,**	*O laws*
Abl.	**Lēg-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a law.*	**Lēg-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from laws.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Jūdex** (*c.*),	*a judge*	**Jūdĭc-ēs,**	*judges*
Gen.	**Jūdĭc-ĭs,**	*of a judge*	**Jūdĭc-um,**	*of judges*
Dat.	**Jūdĭc-ī,**	*to* or *for a judge*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for judges*
Acc.	**Jūdĭc-em,**	*a judge*	**Jūdĭc-ēs,**	*judges*
Voc.	**Jūdex,**	*O judge*	**Jūdĭc-ēs,**	*O judges*
Abl.	**Jūdĭc-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from judges.*

Ĕrăt, (*he, she, it*) *was.* **Ĕrant,** (*they*) *were.*

Exercise VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justi. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Aetā-s** (*f.*),	*an age*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*ages*
Gen.	**Aetāt-ĭs,**	*of an age*	**Aetāt-um,**	*of ages*
Dat.	**Aetāt-ī,**	*to* or *for an age*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for ages*
Acc.	**Aetāt-em,**	*an age*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*ages*
Voc.	**Aetā-s,**	*O age*	**Aetāt-ēs,**	*O ages*
Abl.	**Aetāt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from an age.*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from ages.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Lăpĭs** (*m.*),	*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones*
Gen.	**Lăpĭd-ĭs,**	*of a stone*	**Lăpĭd-um,**	*of stones*
Dat.	**Lăpĭd-ī,**	*to* or *for a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for stones*
Acc.	**Lăpĭd-em,**	*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*stones*
Voc.	**Lăpĭs,**	*O stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs,**	*O stones*
Abl.	**Lăpĭd-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from stones.*

3.

Nom.	**Mīlĕ-s** (*c.*),	*a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers*
Gen.	**Mīlĭt-ĭs,**	*of a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-um,**	*of soldiers*
Dat.	**Mīlĭt-ī,**	*to* or *for a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for soldiers*
Acc.	**Mīlĭt-em,**	*a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*soldiers*
Voc.	**Mīlĕ-s,**	*O soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ēs,**	*O soldiers*
Abl.	**Mīlĭt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from soldiers.*

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, dŏmĭnŭs hastā servum occīdĭt, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, noctēs hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

Occīdĭt, (*he, she, it*) *kills.* **Occīdunt,** (*they*) *kill.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas judicis justa est. 10. Milites judices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Consŭl** (*m.*),	*a consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*consuls*
Gen.	**Consŭl-ĭs,**	*of a consul*	**Consŭl-um,**	*of consuls*
Dat.	**Consŭl-ī,**	*to* or *for a consul*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for consuls*
Acc.	**Consŭl-em,**	*a consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*consuls*
Voc.	**Consŭl,**	*O consul*	**Consŭl-ēs,**	*O consuls*
Abl.	**Consŭl-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a consul.*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from consuls.*

2.

Nom.	**Clāmŏr** (*m.*),	*a shout*	**Clāmōr-ēs,**	*shouts*
Gen.	**Clāmōr-ĭs,**	*of a shout*	**Clāmōr-um,**	*of shouts*
Dat.	**Clāmōr-ī,**	*to* or *for a shout*	**Clāmōr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for shouts*
Acc.	**Clāmōr-em,**	*a shout*	**Clāmōr-ēs,**	*shouts*
Voc.	**Clāmŏr,**	*O shout*	**Clāmōr-ēs,**	*O shouts*
Abl.	**Clāmōr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a shout.*	**Clāmōr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from shouts.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Ansĕr** (*m.*),	*a goose*	**Ansĕr-ēs,**	*geese*
Gen.	**Ansĕr-ĭs,**	*of a goose*	**Ansĕr-um,**	*of geese*
Dat.	**Ansĕr-ī,**	*to* or *for a goose*	**Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for geese*
Acc.	**Ansĕr-em,**	*a goose*	**Ansĕr-ēs,**	*geese*
Voc.	**Ansĕr,**	*O goose*	**Ansĕr-ēs,**	*O geese*
Abl.	**Ansĕr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a goose.*	**Ansĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from geese.*

4.

Nom.	**Pătĕr,**	*a father*	**Patr-ēs,**	*fathers*
Gen.	**Patr-ĭs,**	*of a father*	**Patr-um,**	*of fathers*
Dat.	**Patr-ī,**	*to* or *for a father*	**Patr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for fathers*
Acc.	**Patr-em,**	*a father*	**Patr-ēs,**	*fathers*
Voc.	**Pătĕr,**	*O father*	**Patr-ēs,**	*O fathers*
Abl.	**Patr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a father.*	**Patr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from fathers.*

5.

Nom.	**Flōs** (*m.*),	*a flower*	**Flōr-ēs,**	*flowers*
Gen.	**Flōr-ĭs,**	*of a flower*	**Flōr-um,**	*of flowers*
Dat.	**Flōr-ī,**	*to* or *for a flower*	**Flōr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for flowers*
Acc.	**Flōr-em,**	*a flower*	**Flōr-ēs,**	*flowers*
Voc.	**Flōs,**	*O flower*	**Flōr-ēs,**	*O flowers*
Abl.	**Flōr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a flower.*	**Flōr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from flowers.*

Exercise IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ŏn* (*ĭn*).

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Lĕo** (*m.*),	*a lion*	**Lĕōn-ēs,**	*lions*
Gen.	**Lĕōn-ĭs,**	*of a lion*	**Lĕōn-um,**	*of lions*
Dat.	**Lĕōn-ī,**	*to* or *for a lion*	**Lĕōn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for lions*
Acc.	**Lĕōn-em,**	*a lion*	**Lĕōn-ēs,**	*lions*
Voc.	**Lĕo,**	*O lion*	**Lĕōn-ēs,**	*O lions*
Abl.	**Lĕōn-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a lion.*	**Lĕōn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from lions.*

	Sing.		2. Plur.	
Nom.	**Virgō** (*f.*),	*a maiden*	**Virgĭn-ēs,**	*maidens*
Gen.	**Virgĭn-ĭs,**	*of a maiden*	**Virgĭn-um,**	*of maidens*
Dat.	**Virgĭn-ī,**	*to* or *for a maiden*	**Virgĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for maidens*
Acc.	**Virgĭn-em,**	*a maiden*	**Virgĭn-ēs,**	*maidens*
Voc.	**Virgo,**	*O maiden*	**Virgĭn-ēs,**	*O maidens*
Abl.	**Virgĭn-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a maiden.*	**Virgĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from maidens.*

Exercise X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. Stems ending in I.

	Sing.		1. Plur.	
Nom.	**Host-ĭs** (*c.*),	*an enemy*	**Host-ēs,**	*enemies*
Gen.	**Host-ĭs,**	*of an enemy*	**Host-ĭum,**	*of enemies*
Dat.	**Host-ī,**	*to* or *for an enemy*	**Host-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for enemies*
Acc.	**Host-em,**	*an enemy*	**Host-ēs,**	*enemies*
Voc.	**Host-ĭs,**	*O enemy*	**Host-ēs,**	*O enemies*
Abl.	**Host-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from an enemy.*	**Host-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from enemies.*

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined:—

Nom.	**Nūb-ēs** (*f.*),	*a cloud*	**Nūb-ēs,**	*clouds*
Gen.	**Nūb-ĭs,**	*of a cloud*	**Nūb-ĭum,**	*of clouds*
Dat.	**Nūb-ī,**	*to* or *for a cloud*	**Nūb-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for clouds*
Acc.	**Nūb-em,**	*a cloud*	**Nūb-ēs,**	*clouds*
Voc.	**Nūb-ēs,**	*O cloud*	**Nūb-ēs,**	*O clouds*
Abl.	**Nūb-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a cloud.*	**Nūb-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from clouds.*

Exercise XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. *Neuter Nouns.*

I. Stems ending in a Consonant.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Nōmĕn,**	*a name*	**Nōmĭn-ă,**	*names*
Gen.	**Nōmĭn-ĭs,**	*of a name*	**Nōmĭn-um,**	*of names*
Dat.	**Nōmĭn-ī,**	*to* or *for a name*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for names*
Acc.	**Nōmĕn,**	*a name*	**Nōmĭn-ă,**	*names*
Voc.	**Nōmĕn,**	*O name*	**Nōmĭn-ă,**	*O names*
Abl.	**Nōmĭn-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from names.*

2.

Nom.	**Fulgŭr,**	*lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ă,**	*lightnings*
Gen.	**Fulgŭr-ĭs,**	*of lightning*	**Fulgŭr-um,**	*of lightnings*
Dat.	**Fulgŭr-ī,**	*to* or *for lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for lightnings*
Acc.	**Fulgŭr,**	*lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ă,**	*lightnings*
Voc.	**Fulgŭr,**	*O lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ă,**	*O lightnings*
Abl.	**Fulgŭr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from lightnings.*

3.

Nom.	**Crūs,**	*a leg*	**Crūr-ă,**	*legs*
Gen.	**Crūr-ĭs,**	*of a leg*	**Crūr-um,**	*of legs*
Dat.	**Crūr-ī,**	*to* or *for a leg*	**Crūr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for legs*
Acc.	**Crūs,**	*a leg*	**Crūr-ă,**	*legs*
Voc.	**Crūs,**	*O leg*	**Crūr-ă,**	*O legs*
Abl.	**Crūr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a leg.*	**Crūr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from legs.*

4.

Nom.	**Ŏpŭs,**	*a work*	**Ŏpĕr-ă,**	*works*
Gen.	**Ŏpĕr-ĭs,**	*of a work*	**Ŏpĕr-um,**	*of works*
Dat.	**Ŏpĕr-ī,**	*to* or *for a work*	**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for works*
Acc.	**Ŏpŭs,**	*a work*	**Ŏpĕr-ă,**	*works*
Voc.	**Ŏpŭs,**	*O work*	**Ŏpĕr-ă,**	*O works*
Abl.	**Ŏpĕr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a work.*	**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from works.*

5.

Nom.	**Corpŭs,**	*a body*	**Corpŏr-ă,**	*bodies*
Gen.	**Corpŏr-ĭs,**	*of a body*	**Corpŏr-um,**	*of bodies*
Dat.	**Corpŏr-ī,**	*to* or *for a body*	**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for bodies*
Acc.	**Corpŭs,**	*a body*	**Corpŏr-ă,**	*bodies*
Voc.	**Corpŭs,**	*O body*	**Corpŏr-ă,**	*O bodies*
Abl.	**Corpŏr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a body.*	**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from bodies.*

6.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Căpŭt,**	*a head*	**Căpĭt-ă,**	*heads*
Gen.	**Căpĭt-ĭs,**	*of a head*	**Căpĭt-um,**	*of heads*
Dat.	**Căpĭt-ī,**	*to* or *for a head*	**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for heads*
Acc.	**Căpŭt,**	*a head*	**Căpĭt-ă,**	*heads*
Voc.	**Căpŭt,**	*O head*	**Căpĭt-ă,**	*O heads*
Abl.	**Căpĭt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a head.*	**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from heads.*

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ĕ, ăl, ăr.*

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*the sea*	**Măr-ĭă,**	*seas*
Gen.	**Măr-ĭs,**	*of the sea*	**Măr-ĭum,**	*of seas*
Dat.	**Măr-ī,**	*to* or *for the sea*	**Măr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for seas*
Acc.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*the sea*	**Măr-ĭă,**	*seas*
Voc.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*O sea*	**Măr-ĭă,**	*O seas*
Abl.	**Măr-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from the sea.*	**Măr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from seas.*

2.

Nom.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*an animal*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭă,**	*animals*
Gen.	**Ănĭmāl-ĭs,**	*of an animal*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭum,**	*of animals*
Dat.	**Ănĭmāl-ī,**	*to* or *for an animal*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for animals*
Acc.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*an animal*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭă,**	*animals*
Voc.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*O animal*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭă,**	*O animals*
Abl.	**Ănĭmāl-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from an animal.*	**Ănĭmāl-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from animals.*

3.

Nom.	**Calcăr,**	*a spur*	**Calcār-ĭă,**	*spurs*
Gen.	**Calcār-ĭs,**	*of a spur*	**Calcār-ĭum,**	*of spurs*
Dat.	**Calcār-ī,**	*to* or *for a spur*	**Calcār-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for spurs*
Acc.	**Calcăr,**	*a spur*	**Calcār-ĭă,**	*spurs*
Voc.	**Calcăr,**	*O spur*	**Calcār-ĭă,**	*O spurs*
Abl.	**Calcār-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from a spur.*	**Calcār-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from spurs.*

EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nōmen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent.

5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. **Magnŭs Dux**,—*a great leader.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Magnŭs dux**	**Magnī dŭcēs**
Gen.	**Magnī dŭcĭs**	**Magnōrum dŭcum**
Dat.	**Magnō dŭcī**	**Magnīs dŭcĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Magnum dŭcem**	**Magnōs dŭcēs**
Voc.	**Magnĕ dux**	**Magnī dŭcēs**
Abl.	**Magnō dŭcĕ**	**Magnīs dŭcĭbŭs.**

2. **Bŏnă Mātĕr**,—*a good mother.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Bŏnă mātĕr**	**Bŏnae mātrēs**
Gen.	**Bŏnae mātrĭs**	**Bŏnārum mātrum**
Dat.	**Bŏnae mātrī**	**Bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Bŏnam mātrem**	**Bŏnās mātrēs**
Voc.	**Bŏnă mātĕr**	**Bŏnae mātrēs**
Abl.	**Bŏnā mātrĕ**	**Bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs.**

3. **Răpĭdum Flūmĕn**,—*a rapid river.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Răpĭdum flūmĕn**	**Răpĭdă flūmĭnă**
Gen.	**Răpĭdī flūmĭnĭs**	**Răpĭdōrum flūmĭnum**
Dat.	**Răpĭdō flūmĭnī**	**Răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Răpĭdum flūmĕn**	**Răpĭdă flūmĭnă**
Voc.	**Răpĭdum flūmĕn**	**Răpĭdă flūmĭnă**
Abl.	**Răpĭdō flūmĭnĕ**	**Răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs.**

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in ĕr, rĭs, rĕ, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, ***sharp***; cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, ***swift.***

	Sing. M.	Sing. F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M. and F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Ācĕr**	**ācrĭs**	**ācrĕ**	**Ācrēs**	**ācrĭă**
Gen.	**Ācrĭs**	**ācrĭs**	**ācrĭs**	**Ācrium**	**ācrium**
Dat.	**Ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**Ācrĭbŭs**	**ācrĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācrĕ**	**Ācrēs**	**ācrĭă**
Voc.	**Ācĕr**	**ācrĭs**	**ācrĕ**	**Ācrēs**	**ācrĭă**
Abl.	**Ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**Ācrĭbŭs**	**ācrĭbŭs**

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two termina-

tions in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in ĭs: as, tristĭs (*masc.* and *fem.*), tristĕ (*neut.*), *sad.*
2. Comparatives, ending in ĭŏr, ĭŭs: as, mĕlĭŏr (*masc.* and *fem.*), mĕlĭŭs (*neut.*), *better.*

1.

	Sing. M. and F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M. and F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Trist-ĭs**	**trist-ĕ**	**Trist-ēs**	**trist-ĭă**
Gen.	**Trist-ĭs**	**trist-ĭs**	**Trist-ĭum**	**trist-ĭum**
Dat.	**Trist-ī**	**trist-ī**	**Trist-ĭbŭs**	**trist-ĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Trist-em**	**trist-ĕ**	**Trist-ēs**	**trist-ĭă**
Voc.	**Trist-ĭs**	**trist-ĕ**	**Trist-ēs**	**trist-ĭă**
Abl.	**Trist-ī**	**trist-ī**	**Trist-ĭbŭs**	**trist-ĭbŭs**

2.

	Sing. M. and F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M. and F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Mĕlĭŏr-ēs**	**mĕlĭŏr-ă**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-um**	**mĕlĭōr-um**
Dat.	**Mĕlĭōr-ī**	**mĕlĭōr-ī**	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Mĕlĭōr-em**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-ēs**	**mĕlĭōr-ă**
Voc.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-ēs**	**mĕlĭōr-ă**
Abl.	**Mĕlĭōr-ĕ** *or* **ī**	**mĕlĭōr-ĕ** *or* **ī**	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**

III. Adjectives of One Termination are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: as, fēlix, *fortunate*; prūdens, *prudent.*

1.

	Sing. M. and F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M. and F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Fēlix**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Gen.	**Fēlīc-ĭs**	**fēlīc-ĭs**	**Fēlīc-ĭum**	**fēlīc-ĭum**
Dat.	**Fēlīc-ī**	**fēlīc-ī**	**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	**fēlīc-ĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Fēlīc-em**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Voc.	**Fēlix**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Abl.	**Fēlīc-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**fēlīc-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	**fēlīc-ĭbŭs**

2.

	Sing. M. and F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M. and F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Prūdens**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Gen.	**Prūdent-ĭs**	**prūdent-ĭs**	**Prūdent-ĭum**	**prūdent-ĭum**
Dat.	**Prūdent-ī**	**prūdent-ī**	**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	**prūdent-ĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Prūdent-em**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Voc.	**Prūdens**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Abl.	**Prūdent-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**prūdent-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	**prūdent-ĭbŭs**

Adjectives of Third Declension, declined with Nouns of First, Second, and Third Declensions.

1. Cĕlĕrĭs Săgittă,—*a swift arrow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Cĕlĕrĭs săgittă**	**Cĕlĕrēs săgittae**
Gen.	**Cĕlĕrĭs săgittae**	**Cĕlĕrum săgittārum**
Dat.	**Cĕlĕrī săgittae**	**Cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgittīs**
Acc.	**Cĕlĕrem săgittam**	**Cĕlĕrēs săgittas**
Voc.	**Cĕlĕrĭs săgittă**	**Cĕlĕrēs săgittae**
Abl.	**Cĕlĕrī săgittā**	**Cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgittīs**

2. Tristĕ Proelīum,—*a sad battle.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Tristĕ proelīum**	**Tristīă proelīă**
Gen.	**Tristĭs proelīī**	**Tristīum proelīōrum**
Dat.	**Tristī proelīō**	**Tristĭbŭs proelīīs**
Acc.	**Tristĕ proelīum**	**Tristīă proelīă**
Voc.	**Tristĕ proelīum**	**Tristīă proelīă**
Abl.	**Tristī proelīō**	**Tristĭbŭs proelīīs**

3. Fēlix Hŏmo,—*a happy man.*

Nom.	**Fēlix hŏmo**	**Fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs**
Gen.	**Fēlīcĭs hŏmĭnĭs**	**Fēlīcium hŏmĭnum**
Dat.	**Fēlīcī hŏmĭnī**	**Fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Fēlīcem hŏmĭnem**	**Fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs**
Voc.	**Fēlix hŏmo**	**Fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs**
Abl.	**Fēlīcī *or* ĕ hŏmĭnĕ**	**Fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs**

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. Ira furor brevis est. 2. Ira militum erat acris. 3. Via est facilis. 4. Omne initium est difficile. 5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt. 6. Vulnus militis est leve. 7. Carmen est dulce. 8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in ŭs, and of Neuter Nouns in u.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Grăd-ŭs** (*m.*),	*a step*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps*
Gen.	**Grăd-ūs,**	*of a step*	**Grăd-ŭum,**	*of steps*
Dat.	**Grăd-ŭī,**	*to* or *for a step*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for steps*
Acc.	**Grăd-um,**	*a step*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*steps*
Voc.	**Grăd-ŭs,**	*O step*	**Grăd-ūs,**	*O steps*
Abl.	**Grăd-ū,**	*by, with,* or *from a step.*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from steps.*

2.

Nom.	**Gĕn-u** (*n.*),	*a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees*
Gen.	**Gĕn-ūs,**	*of a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭum,**	*of knees*
Dat.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*to* or *for a knee*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for knees*
Acc.	**Gĕn-u,**	*a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*knees*
Voc.	**Gĕn-u,**	*O knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă,**	*O knees*
Abl.	**Gĕn-ū,**	*by, with,* or *from a knee.*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from knees.*

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ŭbŭs: as, ăcŭbŭs, arcŭbŭs, portŭbŭs, vĕrŭbŭs, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular ŭī is sometimes contracted into ū: as, grădŭī, grădū.

EXERCISE XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

* Quĕ, *and* (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in ēs.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*a day*	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*days*
Gen.	**Dĭ-ēī,**	*of a day*	**Dĭ-ērum,**	*of days*
Dat.	**Dĭ-ēī,**	*to* or *for a day*	**Dĭ-ēbŭs,**	*to* or *for days*
Acc.	**Dĭ-em,**	*a day*	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*days*
Voc.	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*O day*	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*O days*
Abl.	**Dĭ-ē,**	*by, with,* or *from a day.*	**Dĭ-ēbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from days.*

NOTE.—In Nouns like rēs, where ēs is preceded by a Consonant, the e becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, rĕī, spĕī.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except **dĭēs,** which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and **mĕrīdiēs,** *midday,* which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where,* it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in:* as, hostēs ĭn plānĭtĭē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.* See Rule 7, p. 13.

EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnities.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined :—

	Dĕŭs, *m., God.* (2 Decl.)		**Dŏmŭs,** *f., a house.* (2 and 4 Decl.)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Dĕŭs**	**Dĕī, Dĭī,** *or* **Dī**	**Dŏmŭs**	**Dŏmūs**
Gen.	**Dĕī**	**Dĕōrum,** *or* **Deûm**	**Dŏmūs**	**Dŏmŭum,** *or* **dŏmōrum**
Dat.	**Dĕō**	**Dĕīs, Dĭīs,** *or* **Dīs**	**Dŏmŭī**	**Dŏmĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Dĕum**	**Dĕōs**	**Dŏmum**	**Dŏmōs** (*rarely* **dŏmūs**)
Voc.	**Dĕŭs**	**Dĕī, Dĭī,** *or* **Dī**	**Dŏmŭs**	**Dŏmūs**
Abl.	**Dĕō**	**Dĕīs, Dĭīs,** *or* **Dīs**	**Dŏmō**	**Dŏmĭbŭs**

N.B.—The form *dŏmī* is used only in the sense of *at home.*

Bōs, *c.*, *an ox* or *cow*. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Bōs**	**Bŏvēs**
Gen.	**Bŏvĭs**	**Bŏvum**, *or* **bŏum**
Dat.	**Bŏvī**	**Bōbŭs**, *or* **būbŭs**
Acc.	**Bŏvem**	**Bŏvēs**
Voc.	**Bōs**	**Bŏvēs**
Abl.	**Bŏvĕ**	**Bōbŭs**, *or* **būbŭs**

Sĕnex, *m.*, *an old man*. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
	Sĕnex	**Sĕnēs**
	Sĕnĭs	**Sĕnum**
	Sĕnī	**Sĕnĭbŭs**
	Sĕnem	**Sĕnēs**
	Sĕnex	**Sĕnēs**
	Sĕnĕ	**Sĕnĭbŭs**

Vīs, *f.*, *strength*. (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Vīs**	**Vīrēs**
Gen.	wanting	**Vīrium**
Dat.	wanting	**Vīrĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Vim**	**Vīrēs**
Voc.	wanting	**Vīrēs**
Abl.	**Vī**	**Vīrĭbŭs**

Jūpĭtĕr (= Jŏv-pĭtĕr, *i. e.* pătĕr, (3 Decl.) *the god*.

	Sing.	
	Jūpĭtĕr	No plural.
	Jŏvĭs	
	Jŏvī	
	Jŏvem	
	Jūpĭtĕr	
	Jŏvĕ	

Jusjūrandum, *n.*, *an oath* (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

	Sing.	
Nom.	**Jusjūrandum**	No plural.
Gen.	**Jūrisjūrandī**	
Dat.	**Jūrījūrandō**	
Acc.	**Jusjūrandum**	
Voc.	**Jusjūrandum**	
Abl.	**Jūrĕjūrandō**	

Respublĭca, *f.*, *a commonwealth*, *a republic* (properly two words, Rēs, 5 Decl., and publĭcă, 1 Decl.).

	Sing.	
Nom.	**Respublĭcă**	No plural.
Gen.	**Reīpublĭcae**	
Dat.	**Reīpublĭcae**	
Acc.	**Rempublĭcam**	
Voc.	**Respublĭcă**	
Abl.	**Rēpublĭcā**	

Exercise XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The

* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath*.

house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

XII.—Some Irregular Adjectives.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. ĭūs (rarely īŭs) and in the Dative ī—

ūnŭs, ă, um,	*one, alone.*	altĕr, altĕră, altĕrum, *one of two;* altĕr . . . . altĕr, *the one . . . . the other.*
sōlŭs, ă, um,	*alone.*	ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd, *one of any number;* ălĭŭs . . . . ălĭŭs, *one . . . . another;* in pl. *some, others.*
tōtŭs, ă, um,	*whole.*	
ullŭs, ă, um,	*any.*	
nullŭs, ă, um,	*no, none.*	
ŭtĕr, utră, utrum,	*which of two.*	
neutĕr, neutră, neutrum,	*neither.*	

For example—

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūn-ŭs	ūn-ă	ūn-um	Ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-ă
Gen.	Ūn-īŭs			Ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum
Dat.	Ūn-ī			Ūn-īs		
Acc.	Ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	Ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ă
Abl.	Ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	Ūn-īs		

Obs. As to the use of the Plural of *ūnŭs*, see p. 27.
The Genitive Singular of altĕr is *altĕrīŭs*, and of ălĭŭs is *ălīŭs*.

Exercise XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat vêram voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alīus (*gen.*) vires, alīus (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudem, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totam laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

XIII.—Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Altŭs, *high.*	Altĭŏr, *higher.*	Altissĭmŭs, *highest, most high,* or *very high.*

The Comparative is formed by adding *ĭŏr* and the Superlative by adding *issĭmŭs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Posit. Nom.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
Altŭs,	**Alt-ī,**	*high,*	**Alt-ĭŏr,**	**Alt-issĭmŭs.**
Lĕvĭs,	**Lĕv-ĭs,**	*light,*	**Lĕv-ĭŏr,**	**Lĕv-issĭmŭs.**
Fēlix,	**Fēlīc-ĭs,**	*fortunate,*	**Fēlīc-ĭŏr,**	**Fēlīc-issĭmŭs.**
Prūdens,	**Prūdent-ĭs,**	*prudent,*	**Prūdent-ĭŏr,**	**Prūdent-issĭmŭs.**

The Comparative is declined on p. 19 (mĕl-ĭŏr).

The Superlative is declined like bŏnus, bŏna, bŏnum.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. Adjectives ending in ĕr form the Superlative in rĭmŭs: as,

Posit. Nom.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
pulchĕr,	pulchr-ī,	*beautiful,*	pulchr-ĭor,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.
lībĕr,	lībĕr-ī,	*free,*	lībĕr-ĭor,	līber-rĭmŭs.
ācĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	*sharp,*	ācr-ĭor,	ācer-rĭmŭs.
cĕlĕr,	cĕlĕr-ĭs,	*swift,*	cĕlĕr-ĭor,	cĕler-rĭmŭs.

Also vĕtŭs (*Gen.* vĕtĕr-is), *old*, has a Superlative, vĕter-rĭmŭs.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in ĭlĭs form their Superlative in lĭmŭs: as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
făcĭlĭs,	*easy,*	făcĭl-ĭor,	făcil-lĭmŭs.
diffĭcĭlĭs,	*difficult,*	diffĭcĭl-ĭor,	diffĭcil-lĭmŭs.
sĭmĭlĭs,	*like,*	sĭmĭl-ĭor,	sĭmil-lĭmŭs.
dissĭmĭlĭs,	*unlike,*	dissĭmĭl-ĭor,	dissĭmil-lĭmŭs.
grăcĭlĭs,	*thin,*	grăcĭl-ĭor,	grăcil-lĭmŭs.
hŭmĭlĭs,	*low,*	hŭmĭl-ĭor,	hŭmil-lĭmŭs.

III. Adjectives ending in dĭcŭs, fĭcŭs, and vŏlŭs, form their Comparative in entĭŏr, and their Superlative in entissĭmŭs: as,

Posit		Comp.	Sup.
mălĕdĭcŭs,	*slanderous,*	mălĕdĭcentĭŏr,	mălĕdĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕfĭcŭs,	*beneficent,*	bĕnĕfĭcentĭŏr,	bĕnĕfĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕvŏlŭs,	*benevolent,*	bĕnĕvŏlentĭŏr,	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb măgĭs, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most:* as, noxĭŭs, *hurtful*, măgĭs noxĭŭs, *more hurtful*, maxĭmē noxĭŭs, *most hurtful.*

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bŏnus,	*good,*	mĕlĭor,	optĭmŭs.
mălus,	*bad,*	pējor,	pessĭmŭs.
magnus,	*great,*	mājor,	maxĭmŭs.
parvus,	*small,*	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmŭs.
multus,	*much,*	plūs (*see below*),	plūrĭmŭs.
nēquam (*not declined*),	*worthless,*	nēquior,	nēquissĭmŭs.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
dīves,	*rich*,	dītĭor,	dītissĭmŭs.
sĕnex,	*old*,	sĕnĭor [nātū mājŏr],	[nātū maxĭmŭs].
jŭvĕnis,	*young*,	jūnĭor [nātū mĭnŏr],	[nātū mĭnĭmŭs].
sŭpĕrus,	*upper*,	sŭpĕrĭor,	suprēmŭs, summŭs.
infĕrus,	*lower*,	infĕrĭor,	infĭmŭs, īmŭs.
extĕrus,	*outside*,	extĕrĭor,	extrēmŭs, extĭmŭs.
intĕrus,	*inside*,	intĕrĭor,	intĭmŭs.
postĕrus,	*behind*,	postĕrĭor,	postrēmŭs, postŭmŭs.
—	—	prĭor (*former*),	prīmŭs (*first*). [*next*).
—	—	prŏpĭor (*nearer*),	proxĭmŭs (*nearest*,
—	—	ultĕrĭor (*further*),	ultĭmŭs (*furthest*, *last*).

	Singular. Neut. only.	Plural. Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūră
Gen.	Plūrĭs	Plūrĭum	Plūrĭum
Dat.	Plūrī	Plūrĭbŭs	Plūrĭbŭs
Acc.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūră
Abl.	Plūrĕ	Plūrĭbŭs	Plūrĭbŭs

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin **quam** (indeclinable).

EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperrimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—The Numerals.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnŭs, *one;* dŭŏ, *two;* trēs, *three.* They are given on the next page.

The declension of ūnŭs is given on p. 24.

Obs. Ūnŭs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnă castră, *one camp;* ūnae aedēs, *one house;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter.*

Dŭŏ, *two,* trēs, *three,* and millĭă, *thousands,* are declined as follows:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	**Dŭ-ŏ**	**dŭ-ae**	**dŭ-ŏ**	**Trēs**	**tria**	**Millĭă**
Gen.	**Dŭ-ōrum**	**dŭ-ārum**	**dŭ-ōrum**	**Trium**	**trium**	**Millium**
Dat.	**Dŭ-ōbŭs**	**dŭ-ābŭs**	**dŭ-ōbŭs**	**Trĭbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	**Millĭbŭs**
Acc.	**Dŭ-ōs** *or* **dŭ-ŏ**	**dŭ-ās**	**dŭ-ŏ**	**Trēs** *or* **trīs**	**tria**	**Millĭă**
Abl.	**Dŭ-ōbŭs**	**dŭ-ābŭs**	**dŭ-ōbŭs**	**Trĭbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	**Millĭbŭs**

Obs. Ambō, *both,* is declined like duo.

Millĕ, *a thousand,* in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but millĭă, *thousands,* in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millĕ hŏmĭnēs, *a thousand men;* but dŭŏ millĭă hŏmĭnum, *two thousand men,* literally, *two thousands of men.*

The Cardinal Numerals from quattŭŏr, *four,* to centum, *a hundred,* are indeclinable. They are given on the next page.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred,* and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, prīmŭs, *first;* sĕcundŭs, or altĕr, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives.

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus.
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundus *or* altĕr.
3	III	trēs	tertĭus.
4	IV	quattŭŏr (quātŭŏr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septĭmus.
8	VIII	octŏ	octāvus.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmus.
14	XIV	quattuordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus.
15	XV	quindĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīgintī	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus.
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭmus.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus.
22	XXII	duŏ et vīgintī *or* vīgintī duŏ	alter et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus tertĭus.
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsĭmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsĭmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus.
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsĭmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus.
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus.
200	CC	dŭcentī, ae, ă	ducentēsĭmus.
300	CCC	trĕcentī, ae, ă	trĕcentēsĭmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, ae, ă	quadringentēsĭmus.
500	D *or* IƆ	quingentī, ae, ă	quingentēsĭmus.
600	DC	sexcentī, ae, ă	sexcentēsĭmus.
700	DCC	septingentī, ae, ă	septingentēsĭmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, ae, ă	octingentēsĭmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ă	nongentēsĭmus.
1,000	M *or* CIƆ	millĕ	millēsĭmus.
2,000	MM	duŏ millĭă	bis millēsĭmus.
100,000	CCCIƆƆƆ	centum millĭă	centiēs millēsĭmus.

Exercise XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.*

* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—The Verb Sum, *I am*.

Sum, fŭī, fŭtūrŭs, essĕ,—*to be*. Stem: **ĕs-, fu-**.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Sum,**	*I am*	*Plur.*	**Sŭmŭs,**	*We are*
	Ĕs,	*thou art*		**Estis,**	*ye are*
	Est,	*he is.*		**Sunt,**	*they are.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕram,**	*I was*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	*We were*
	Ĕrās,	*thou wast*		**Ĕrātĭs,**	*ye were*
	Ĕrăt,	*he was.*		**Ĕrant,**	*they were.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕro,**	*I shall be*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall be*
	Ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*		**Ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will be*
	Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*		**Ĕrunt,**	*they will be.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuī,**	*I have been*, or *I was*	*Plur.*	**Fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been*, or *we were*
	Fuistī,	*thou hast been*, or *thou wast*		**Fuistĭs,**	*ye have been*, or *ye were*
	Fuĭt,	*he has been*, or *he was.*		**Fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been*, or *they were.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕram,**	*I had been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been*
	Fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been*		**Fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been*
	Fuĕrăt,	*he had been.*		**Fuĕrant,**	*they had been.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕro,**	*I shall have been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been*
	Fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*		**Fuĕritĭs,**	*ye will have been*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕs,**	*Be thou.*	*Plur.*	**Estĕ,**	*Be ye.*

2. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Estŏ,**	*Thou shalt* or *must be*	*Plur.*	**Estōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must be*
	Estŏ,	*he shall* or *must be.*		**Suntŏ,**	*they shall* or *must be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Sim,**	*I may be*	*Plur.*	**Sīmŭs,**	*We may be*
	Sīs,	*thou mayst be*		**Sītĭs,**	*ye may be*
	Sĭt,	*he may be.*		**Sint,**	*they may be.*

Obs. The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives: as, sint cīvēs justī, *let the citizens be just.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Essem** or **fŏrem,**	*I might be*	*Plur.*	**Essēmŭs** or **fŏrēmŭs,**	*We might be*
	Essēs or **fŏrēs,**	*thou mightst be*		**Essētĭs** or **fŏrētĭs,**	*ye might be*
	Essĕt or **fŏrĕt,**	*he might be.*		**Essent** or **fŏrent,**	*they might be.*

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕrim,**	*I may have been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been*
	Fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been*		**Fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they may have been*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuissem,**	*I should have been.*	*Plur.*	**Fuissēmus,**	*We should have been.*
	Fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been.*		**Fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been.*
	Fuissĕt,	*he would have been.*		**Fuissent,**	*they would have been.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Present, and Imperfect,	**Essĕ,**	*to be.*
Infinitive Perfect, and Pluperfect,	**Fuissĕ,**	*to have been.*

INFINITIVE FUTURE,	**Fŭtūrŭs essĕ**, or **fŏrĕ**,	*to be about to be.*
PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	**Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um,**	*about to be.*

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

Obs. **Fŭtūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, fŭtūrŭs sum, *I am about to be;* fŭtūrŭs ĕram, *I was about to be*, &c.

EXERCISE XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erunt pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen. 4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli suntō attenti. 4. Judices justi sunto. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles sunto. 7. Reges patres patriae sunto. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestra. 10. Praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (sint) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum,	*I am absent.*
Adsum,	*I am present, stand by, side with.*
Dēsum,	*I am wanting.*
Insum,	*I am in.*
Intersum,	*I am among.*
Obsum,	*I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*
Praesum,	*I am before, am at the head of.*
Prōsum,	*I am serviceable, do good to.*
Subsum,	*I am under*, or *amongst.*
Sŭpersum,	*I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. Thĕy are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *d* before *e*: as,

INDICATIVE.

	Present.			Imperfect.	Future.
Sing.	**Prō-sum**	*Plur.*	**Prō-sŭmŭs**	**Prōd-ĕram,**	**Prōd-ĕro,**
	Prōd-ĕs		**Prōd-estĭs**	&c.	&c.
	Prōd-est.		**Prō-sunt.**		

INFINITIVE—*Present.*—**Prōd-esse.**

EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variae cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Ĕgŏ,**	*I*	**Nōs,**	*we*
Gen.	**Mĕī,**	*of me*	**Nostrī** *or* **nostrum,**	*of us*
Dat.	**Mĭhi,**	*to* or *for me*	**Nōbīs,**	*to* or *for us*
Acc.	**Mē,**	*me*	**Nōs,**	*us*
Abl.	**Mē,**	*by, with,* or *from me.*	**Nōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from us.*

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Tū,**	*thou*	**Vōs,**	*ye*
Gen.	**Tŭī,**	*of thee*	**Vestrī** *or* **vestrum,**	*of you*
Dat.	**Tĭbi,**	*to* or *for thee*	**Vōbīs,**	*to* or *for you*
Acc.	**Tē,**	*thee*	**Vōs,**	*you*
Voc.	**Tū,**	*O thou*	**Vōs,**	*O ye*
Abl.	**Tē,**	*by, with,* or *from thee.*	**Vōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from you.*

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it,* ĭs, ĕă, ĭd is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

II. Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

		Sing. and Plur.
Gen.	**Sui,**	*of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat.	**Sĭbi,**	*to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Acc.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*by* or *from himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as, mĕi, *of myself;* tĭbi, *to thyself,* etc.

III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
Mĕus,	**mĕa,**	**mĕum,**	*my* or *mine.*
Tŭus,	**tŭa,**	**tŭum,**	*thy* or *thine.*
Noster,	**nostra,**	**nostrum,**	*our, ours.*
Vester,	**vestra,**	**vestrum,**	*your, yours.*
Sŭus,	**sŭa,**	**sŭum,**	*his, her, its, their.*

Exercise XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunto. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this* (*near me*); pl. *these*.

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc	Hī	hae	haec
Gen.	Hūjus			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic			Hīs		
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc	Hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc	Hīs		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that* (*near you*), *that of yours*; pl. *those*.

Nom.	Istĕ	istă	istŭd	Istī	istae	istă
Gen.	Istīus			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Istī			Istīs		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istŭd	Istōs	istās	istă
Abl.	Istō	istā	istō	Istīs		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that, that yonder*; pl. *those*.

Nom.	Illĕ	illă	illŭd	Illī	illae	illă
Gen.	Illīus			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī			Illīs		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illŭd	Illōs	illās	illă
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs		

Exercise XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. Determinate, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Ĭs, eă, ĭd, *he, she, it, that,* referring to the former part of a sentence.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Ĭs**	**eă**	**ĭd**	**Iī**	**eae**	**eă**
Gen.	**Ējus**			**Eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**Eī**			**Iīs** *or* **eīs**		
Acc.	**Eum**	**eam**	**ĭd**	**Eōs**	**eās**	**eă**
Abl.	**Eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**Iīs** *or* **eīs**		

2. Īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

Nom.	**Īdem**	**eădem**	**ĭdem**	**Iīdem**	**eaedem**	**eădem**
Gen.	**Ējusdem**			**Eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**Eīdem**			**Iīsdem** *or* **eīsdem**		
Acc.	**Eundem**	**eandem**	**ĭdem**	**Eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eădem**
Abl.	**Eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**Iīsdem** *or* **eīsdem**		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	**Ipsĕ**	**ipsă**	**ipsum**	**Ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsă**
Gen.	**Ipsīus**			**Ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**Ipsī**			**Ipsīs**		
Acc.	**Ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**Ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsă**
Abl.	**Ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**Ipsīs**		

4. Relative—Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.*

Nom.	**Quī**	**quae**	**quŏd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjus**			**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cuī**			**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quŏd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		

5. Interrogative—Quĭs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who? which? what?*

Nom.	**Quĭs** *or* **quī**	**quae**	**quĭd** *or* **quŏd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjus**			**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cuī**			**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quĭd** *or* **quŏd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		

The forms **quĭs** and **quĭd** are used by themselves, without a Noun: as, Quĭs ĕs? *who art thou?* Quĭd est? *what is it?* The forms quī and quŏd are used interrogatively with a Noun: as, Quī hŏmo ĕs? *what man art thou?* Quŏd mărĕ, *what sea?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, Fēlix est rex quem omnēs cīvēs laudant, *Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lĕgit, *(he, she, it) reads.* **Lĕgunt,** *(they) read.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est.*

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 3.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat *(does he give)* coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudens) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

The Pupil is to pass over the next 36 pages, and proceed with the Verb on p. 37.

PART I.

GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.

I.—The Alphabet. Parts of Speech.

1. *Alphabet.*—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae*, *oe*, *au*, which are in common use, and *eu*, *ei*, *ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae*, *oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (¯) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech.*—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

1. Substantive, or Noun.
2. Adjective.
3. Pronoun.
4. Verb.
5. Adverb.
6. Preposition.
7. Conjunction.
8. Interjection.

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin mensă means not only *table.* but also *a table* and *the table.*

II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā	=	English	*a* in f*a*ther.
,,	ă	=	,,	*first a* in *a*way, or *a* in vill*a*
,,	ē	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	ae	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	oe	=	,,	*ai* in p*ai*n.
,,	ĕ	=	,,	*e* in m*e*n.
,,	ī	=	,,	*i* in mach*i*ne.
,,	ĭ	=	,,	*i* in p*i*ty.
,,	ō	=	,,	*o* in gl*o*ry.
,,	ŏ	=	,,	*o* in t*o*p.
,,	u	=	,,	*u* in r*u*le.
,,	ŭ	=	,,	*u* in f*u*ll.
,,	au	=	,,	*ow* in p*ow*er.
,,	eu	=	,,	Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin ŭ (differs little from present pronunciation).
,,	ei	=	,,	Latin ĕ followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from *ai* in pl*ai*n).

CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	=	English	*k*.
,,	g	=	,,	*g* in *g*et.
,,	s	=	,,	*s* in *s*in.
,,	t (ratio)	=	,,	*t* in ca*t*, not *sh*, as in na*t*ion.
,,	j	=	,,	*y* in *y*ard.
,,	v	=	,,	*v*.
,,	z, ph, th	=	,,	*z*, *ph*, *th*.

Latin *s* between two vowels = (sometimes) English *s* in rose, *e.g.* 'rosa.'

III.—Substantives or Nouns.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural.*

There are six Cases: *Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative.*

There are three Genders: *Masculine, Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common.*

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	**ae**	**ī**	**ĭs**	**ūs**	**ĕī**
Gen. Plur.	**Ā-rum**	**Ō-rum**	-um / ĭ-um	**Ŭ-um**	**Ē-rum**

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
A	**O**	**consonant or I**	**U**	**E**

IV.—The First or A Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in **ă**.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Mens-ă** (*fem.*)	*a table*	**Mens-ae,**	*tables*
Voc.	**Mens-ă,**	*O table*	**Mens-ae,**	*O tables*
Acc.	**Mens-am,**	*a table*	**Mens-ās,**	*tables*
Gen.	**Mens-ae,**	*of a table*	**Mens-ārum,**	*of tables*
Dat.	**Mens-ae,**	*to* or *for a table*	**Mens-īs,**	*to* or *for tables*
Abl.	**Mens-ā,**	*by, with,* or *from a table.*	**Mens-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from tables.*

Note.—**Fīliă**, *a daughter;* **deă**, *a goddess;* **equă**, *a mare;* **asină**, *a she-ass;* and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in **ābūs: filiābūs, deābūs, equābūs, asinābūs, etc.**

Gender.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, naută, *a sailor.*

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

RULE 1.—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, pŭellă currĭt, *the girl runs;* pŭellae currunt, *the girls run.*

RULE 2.—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case: as, ăquĭlă ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.* NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.	Plural, 3 pers.
Currĭt, (*he, she, it*) *runs.*	**Currunt,** (*they*) *run.*
Hăbĕt, (*he, she, it*) *has.*	**Hăbent,** (*they*) *have.*

EXERCISE I.

1. Filia currit. 2. Filiae currunt. 3. Regina coronam habet. 4. Puella coronam habet. 5. Filia pecuniam habet. 6. Femina pecuniam habet. 7. Roma portas habet. 8. Coloniae portas habent. 9. Puellae rosas habent. 10. Feminae rosas habent. 11. Columbae alas habent. 12. Insulae oras habent.

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

RULE 3.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To be," they are put in the same case: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă, *Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb "To be."

RULE 4.—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă Eurōpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

Est, (*he*) *is.* **Sunt,** (*they*) *are.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Sicilia est insula. 2. Sicilia est insula Europae. 3. Roma est regina Italiae. 4. Incolae Italiae sunt poetae. 5. Incolae insularum sunt nautae. 6. Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae. 7. Insula est patria nautarum. 8. Graecia est patria poetarum. 9. Amicitia est gloria vitae. 10. Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

V.—The Second or O Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ŭs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

A. *Masculine.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Dŏmĭn-ŭs,**	*a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*lords*
Voc.	**Dŏmĭn-ĕ,**	*O lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*O lords*
Acc.	**Dŏmĭn-um,**	*a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ōs,**	*lords*
Gen.	**Dŏmĭn-ī,**	*of a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-ōrum,**	*of lords*
Dat.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*to* or *for a lord*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*to* or *for lords*
Abl.	**Dŏmĭn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a lord.*	**Dŏmĭn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from lords.*

Nom.	**Măgistĕr,**	*a master*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*masters*
Voc.	**Măgistĕr,**	*O master*	**Măgistr-ī,**	*O masters*
Acc.	**Măgistr-um,**	*a master*	**Măgistr-ōs,**	*masters*
Gen.	**Măgistr-ī,**	*of a master*	**Măgistr-ōrum,**	*of masters*
Dat.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*to* or *for a master*	**Măgistr-īs,**	*to* or *for masters*
Abl.	**Măgistr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a master.*	**Măgistr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from masters.*

3.

Nom.	**Puĕr,**	*a boy*	**Puĕr-ī,**	*boys*
Voc.	**Puĕr,**	*O boy*	**Puĕr-ī,**	*O boys*
Acc.	**Puĕr-um,**	*a boy*	**Puĕr-ōs,**	*boys*
Gen.	**Puĕr-ī,**	*of a boy*	**Puĕr-ōrum,**	*of boys*
Dat.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*to* or *for a boy*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*to* or *for boys*
Abl.	**Puĕr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a boy.*	**Puĕr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from boys.*

Note.—Proper Names in ĭŭs make ī in the Vocative, as, Mercŭrĭŭs, *Mercury, Voc.* Mercŭrī. Also the Vocative Singular of fīlĭŭs, *a son*, is fīlī, and of gĕnĭŭs, *a guardian deity*, is gĕnī.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĭr, namely, vĭr, *a man* (as distinguished from *a woman*). It is declined like pŭĕr:

4.

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Vĭr,**	*a man*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*men*
Voc.	**Vĭr,**	*O man*	**Vĭr-ī,**	*O men*
Acc.	**Vĭr-um,**	*a man*	**Vĭr-ōs,**	*men*
Gen.	**Vĭr-ī,**	*of a man*	**Vĭr-ōrum,**	*of men*
Dat.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*to* or *for a man*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*to* or *for men*
Abl.	**Vĭr-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a*	**Vĭr-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from men.*

B. *Neuter.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Regn-um,**	*a kingdom,* or *O kingdom*	**Regn-ă,**	*kingdoms,* or *O kingdoms*
Gen.	**Regn-ī,**	*of a kingdom*	**Regn-ōrum,**	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	**Regn-ō,**	*to* or *for a kingdom*	**Regn-īs,**	*to* or *for kingdoms*
Abl.	**Regn-ō,**	*by, with,* or *from a kingdom.*	**Regn-īs,**	*by, with,* or *from kingdoms.*

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ŭs are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, mālŭs, *an apple-tree.*

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ŭs are Neuter: vīrŭs, *poison;* vulgŭs, *the multitude;* pĕlăgŭs, *the (open) sea.* They are used only in the Singular. (*N.B.* Vulgus is sometimes Masculine.)

ĕt, *and.*

EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in ŭs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, măgistĕr cŏlumbam pŭĕrō dăt, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Dăt, *(he, she, it) gives.* **Dant,** *(they) give.*

EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in ĕr.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socer agros et ministros habet. 7. Socer agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

Exercise V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Adjectives in ŭs, ă, um, or ĕr, (ĕ)ră, (ĕ)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bŏnŭs, bŏnă, bŏnum, *good;* nĭgĕr, nigră, nigrum, *black;* tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

I.

	Sing. M.	Sing. F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M.	Plur. F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ	bŏn-ă	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ă
Acc.	Bŏn-um	bŏn-am	bŏn-um	Bŏn-ōs	bŏn-ās	bŏn-ă
Gen.	Bŏn-ī	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ī	Bŏn-ōrum	bŏn-ārum	bŏn-ōrum
Dat.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ae	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs
Abl.	Bŏn-ō	bŏn-ā	bŏn-ō	Bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs	bŏn-īs

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	Nĭgĕr	nigr-ă	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ă
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ă
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs

3.

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M.	F.	N.
N.V.	**Tĕnĕr**	**tĕnĕr-ă**	**tĕnĕr-um**	**Tĕnĕr-ī**	**tĕnĕr-ae**	**tĕnĕr-ă**
Acc.	**Tĕnĕr-um**	**tĕnĕr-am**	**tĕnĕr-um**	**Tĕnĕr-ōs**	**tĕnĕr-ās**	**tĕnĕr-ă**
Gen.	**Tĕnĕr-ī**	**tĕnĕr-ae**	**tĕnĕr-ī**	**Tĕnĕr-ōrum**	**tĕnĕr-ārum**	**tĕnĕr-ōrum**
Dat.	**Tĕnĕr-ō**	**tĕnĕr-ae**	**tĕnĕr-ō**	**Tĕnĕr-īs**	**tĕnĕr-īs**	**tĕnĕr-īs**
Abl.	**Tĕnĕr-ō**	**tĕnĕr-ā**	**tĕnĕr-ō**	**Tĕnĕr-īs**	**tĕnĕr-īs**	**tĕnĕr-īs**

4.

Feminine Adjective declined along with Feminine Noun, both of First Declension.

Sing.

N.V.	**Parvă mensă,**	*a small table,* or *O small table*
Acc.	**Parvam mensam,**	*a small table*
Gen.	**Parvae mensae,**	*of a small table*
Dat.	**Parvae mensae,**	*to* or *for a small table*
Abl.	**Parvā mensā,**	*by, with,* or *from a small table.*

Plur.

N.V.	**Parvae mensae,**	*small tables,* or *O small tables*
Acc.	**Parvās mensās,**	*small tables*
Gen.	**Parvārum mensārum,**	*of small tables*
Dat.	**Parvīs mensīs,**	*to* or *for small tables*
Abl.	**Parvīs mensīs,**	*by, with,* or *from small tables.*

5.

Masculine Adjectives declined along with Masculine Nouns, both of Second Declension.

(A.)

Sing.

Nom.	**Bŏnŭs dŏmĭnŭs,**	*a good lord*
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ dŏmĭnĕ,**	*O good lord*
Acc.	**Bŏnum dŏmĭnum,**	*a good lord*
Gen.	**Bŏnī dŏmĭnī,**	*of a good lord*
Dat.	**Bŏnō dŏmĭnō,**	*to* or *for a good lord*
Abl.	**Bŏnō dŏmĭnō,**	*by, with,* or *from a good lord.*

Plur.

N.V.	**Bŏnī dŏmĭnī,**	*good lords,* or *O good lords*
Acc.	**Bŏnōs dŏmĭnōs,**	*good lords*
Gen.	**Bŏnōrum dŏmĭnōrum,**	*of good lords*
Dat.	**Bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs,**	*to* or *for good lords*
Abl.	**Bŏnīs dŏmĭnīs,**	*by, with,* or *from good lords.*

(B.)

Sing.

Nom.	**Bŏnŭs pŭĕr.**	*a good boy*
Voc.	**Bŏnĕ pŭĕr,**	*O good boy*
Acc.	**Bŏnum pŭĕrum,**	*a good boy*
Gen.	**Bŏnī pŭĕrī,**	*of a good boy*
Dat.	**Bŏnō pŭĕrō,**	*to* or *for a good boy*
Abl.	**Bŏnō pŭĕrō,**	*by, with,* or *from a good boy.*

Plur.

N.V.	**Bŏnī pŭĕrī,**	*good boys*, or *O good boys*
Acc.	**Bŏnōs pŭĕrōs,**	*good boys*
Gen.	**Bŏnōrum pŭĕrōrum,**	*of good boys*
Dat.	**Bŏnīs pŭĕrīs,**	*to* or *for good boys*
Abl.	**Bŏnīs pŭĕrīs,**	*by*, *with*, or *from good boys.*

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

N.V.A.	**Magnum regnum,**	*a great kingdom*, or *O great kingdom*
Gen.	**Magnī regnī,**	*of a great kingdom*
Dat.	**Magnō regnō,**	*to* or *for a great kingdom*
Abl.	**Magnō regnō,**	*by*, *with*, or *from a great kingdom.*

Plur.

N.V.A.	**Magnă regnă,**	*great kingdoms*, or *O great kingdoms*
Gen.	**Magnōrum regnōrum,**	*of great kingdoms*
Dat.	**Magnīs regnīs,**	*to* or *for great kingdoms*
Abl.	**Magnīs regnīs,**	*by*, *with*, or *from great kingdoms.*

(B.)

Sing. only.

N.V.A.	**Magnum pĕlăgŭs,**	*the great sea*
Gen.	**Magnī pĕlăgī,**	*of the great sea*
Dat.	**Magnō pĕlăgō,**	*to* or *for the great sea*
Abl.	**Magnō pĕlăgō,**	*by*, *with*, or *from the great sea.*

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

Nom.	**Clārŭs naută,**	*a famous sailor*
Voc.	**Clārĕ naută,**	*O famous sailor*
Acc.	**Clārum nautam,**	*a famous sailor*
Gen.	**Clārī nautae,**	*of a famous sailor*
Dat.	**Clārō nautae,**	*to* or *for a famous sailor*
Abl.	**Clārō nautā,**	*by*, *with*, or *from a famous sailor.*

Plur.

N.V.	**Clārī nautae,**	*famous sailors*, or *O famous sailors*
Acc.	**Clārōs nautās,**	*famous sailors*
Gen.	**Clārōrum nautārum,**	*of famous sailors*
Dat.	**Clārīs nautīs,**	*to* or *for famous sailors*
Abl.	**Clārīs nautīs,**	*by*, *with*, or *from famous sailors.*

Rule 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

Exercise VI.

A.—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

B.—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

C.—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

VII.—The Third or Consonant and I Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or i.

A. *Masculine and Feminine Nouns.*

I. Stems ending in a Consonant.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p*, *b*, *m*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Trăb-s** (*f.*),	*a beam*, or *O beam*	**Trăb-ēs,**	*beams*, or *O beams*
Acc.	**Trăb-em,**	*a beam*	**Trăb-ēs,**	*beams*
Gen.	**Trăb-ĭs,**	*of a beam*	**Trăb-um,**	*of beams*
Dat.	**Trăb-ī,**	*to* or *for a beam*	**Trăb-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for beams*
Abl.	**Trăb-ĕ,**	*by, with*, or *from a beam.*	**Trăb-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with*, or *from beams.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Princep-s** (*c.*),	*a chief*, or *O chief*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs*, or *O chiefs*
Acc.	**Princĭp-em,**	*a chief*	**Princĭp-ēs,**	*chiefs*
Gen.	**Princĭp-ĭs,**	*of a chief*	**Princĭp-um,**	*of chiefs*
Dat.	**Princĭp-ī,**	*to* or *for a chief*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for chiefs*
Abl.	**Princĭp-ĕ,**	*by, with*, or *from a chief.*	**Princĭp-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with*, or *from chiefs.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Hiĕm-s** (*f.*),	*winter*, or *O winter*	**Hiĕm-ēs,**	*winters*, or *O winters*
Acc.	**Hiĕm-em,**	*winter*	**Hiĕm-ēs,**	*winters*
Gen.	**Hiĕm-ĭs,**	*of winter*	**Hiĕm-um,**	*of winters*
Dat.	**Hiĕm-ī,**	*to* or *for winter*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for winters*
Abl.	**Hiĕm-ĕ,**	*by, with*, or *from winter.*	**Hiĕm-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with*, or *from winters.*

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c*, *g*. Note.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs*, *gs* are contracted into *x*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Dux** (c.),	*a leader*, or *O leader*	**Dŭc-ēs,**	*leaders*, or *O leaders*
Acc.	**Dŭc-em,**	*a leader*	**Dŭc-ēs,**	*leaders*
Gen.	**Dŭc-ĭs,**	*of a leader*	**Dŭc-um,**	*of leaders*
Dat.	**Dŭc-ī,**	*to* or *for a leader*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for leaders*
Abl.	**Dŭc-ĕ,**	*by, with*, or *from a leader.*	**Dŭc-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with*, or *from leaders.*

2.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Lex** (*f.*), *a law*, or *O law*		**Lēg-ēs**,	*laws*, or *O laws*
Acc.	**Lēg-em**,	*a law*	**Lēg-ēs**,	*laws*
Gen.	**Lēg-ĭs**,	*of a law*	**Lēg-um**,	*of laws*
Dat.	**Lēg-ī**,	*to* or *for a law*	**Lēg-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for laws*
Abl.	**Lēg-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a law.*	**Lēg-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from laws.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Jūdex** (*c.*), *a judge*, or *O judge*		**Jūdĭc-ēs**,	*judges*, or *O judges*
Acc.	**Jūdĭc-em**,	*a judge*	**Jūdĭc-ēs**,	*judges*
Gen.	**Jūdĭc-ĭs**,	*of a judge*	**Jūdĭc-um**,	*of judges*
Dat.	**Jūdĭc-ī**,	*to* or *for a judge*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for judges*
Abl.	**Jūdĭc-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a judge.*	**Jūdĭc-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from judges.*

Ĕrăt, (*he*, *she*, *it*) *was*. **Ĕrant**, (*they*) *were*.

Exercise VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justi. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (tooth) letters *t*, *d*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Aetā-s** (*f.*), *an age*, or *O age*		**Aetāt-ēs**,	*ages*, or *O ages*
Acc.	**Aetāt-em**,	*an age*	**Aetāt-ēs**,	*ages*
Gen.	**Aetāt-ĭs**,	*of an age*	**Aetāt-um**,	*of ages*
Dat.	**Aetāt-ī**,	*to* or *for an age*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for ages*
Abl.	**Aetāt-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from an age.*	**Aetāt-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from ages.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Lăpĭs** (*m.*), *a stone*, or *O stone*		**Lăpĭd-ēs**,	*stones*, or *O stones*
Acc.	**Lăpĭd-em**,	*a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ēs**,	*stones*
Gen.	**Lăpĭd-ĭs**,	*of a stone*	**Lăpĭd-um**,	*of stones*
Dat.	**Lăpĭd-ī**,	*to* or *for a stone*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for stones*
Abl.	**Lăpĭd-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a stone.*	**Lăpĭd-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from stones.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Mīlĕ-s** (*c.*),	*a soldier*, or *O* [*soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ēs**,	*soldiers*, or *O soldiers*
Acc.	**Mīlĭt-em**,	*a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ēs**,	*soldiers*
Gen.	**Mīlĭt-ĭs**,	*of a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-um**,	*of soldiers*
Dat.	**Mīlĭt-ī**,	*to* or *for a soldier*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for soldiers*
Abl.	**Mīlĭt-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a soldier.*	**Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from soldiers.*

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, dŏmĭnŭs hastā servum occīdĭt, *the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, noctēs hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

Occīdĭt, (*he, she, it*) *kills.* **Occīdunt**, (*they*) *kill.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas judicis justa est. 10. Milites judices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Consŭl** (*m.*),	*a consul*, or *O* [*consul*	**Consŭl-ēs**,	*consuls*, or *O consuls*
Acc.	**Consŭl-em**,	*a consul*	**Consŭl-ēs**,	*consuls*
Gen.	**Consŭl-ĭs**,	*of a consul*	**Consŭl-um**,	*of consuls*
Dat.	**Consŭl-ī**,	*to* or *for a consul*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for consuls*
Abl.	**Consŭl-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a consul.*	**Consŭl-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from consuls.*

N.V.	**Clāmŏr** (*m.*),	*a shout*, or *O* [*shout*	**Clāmōr-ēs**,	*shouts*, or *O shouts*
Acc.	**Clāmōr-em**,	*a shout*	**Clāmōr-ēs**,	*shouts*
Gen.	**Clāmōr-ĭs**,	*of a shout*	**Clāmōr-um**,	*of shouts*
Dat.	**Clāmōr-ī**,	*to* or *for a shout*	**Clāmōr-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for shouts*
Abl.	**Clāmōr-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a shout.*	**Clāmōr-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from shouts.*

3.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Ansĕr** (*m.*),	*a goose*, or *O goose*	**Ansĕr-ēs**,	
Acc.	**Ansĕr-em**,	*a goose*	**Ansĕr-ēs**,	
Gen.	**Ansĕr-ĭs**,	*of a goose*	**Ansĕr-um**,	*of geese*
Dat.	**Ansĕr-ī**,	*to* or *for a goose*	**Ansĕr-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for geese*
Abl.	**Ansĕr-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a goose.*	**Ansĕr-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from geese.*

4.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Pătĕr**,	*a father*, or *O father*	**Patr-ēs**,	*fathers*, or *O fathers*
Acc.	**Patr-em**,	*a father*	**Patr-ēs**,	*fathers*
Gen.	**Patr-ĭs**,	*of a father*	**Patr-um**,	*of fathers*
Dat.	**Patr-ī**,	*to* or *for a father*	**Patr-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for fathers*
Abl.	**Patr-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a father.*	**Patr-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from fathers.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Flōs** (*m.*),	*a flower*, or *O flower*	**Flōr-ēs**,	*flowers*, or *O flowers*
Acc.	**Flōr-em**,	*a flower*	**Flōr-ēs**,	*flowers*
Gen.	**Flōr-ĭs**,	*of a flower*	**Flōr-um**,	*of flowers*
Dat.	**Flōr-ī**,	*to* or *for a flower*	**Flōr-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for flowers*
Abl.	**Flōr-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a*	**Flōr-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from flowers.*

Exercise IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ŏn* (*ĭn*).

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Lĕo** (*m.*),	*a lion*, or *O lion*	**Lĕōn-ēs**,	*lions*, or *O lions*
Acc.	**Lĕōn-em**,	*a lion*	**Lĕōn-ēs**,	*lions*
Gen.	**Lĕōn-ĭs**,	*of a lion*	**Lĕōn-um**,	*of lions*
Dat.	**Lĕōn-ī**,	*to* or *for a lion*	**Lĕōn-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for lions*
Abl.	**Lĕōn-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a lion.*	**Lĕōn-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from lions.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Virgo** (*f.*),	*a maiden*, or *O maiden*	**Virgĭn-ēs**,	*maidens*, or *O maidens*
Acc.	**Virgĭn-em**,	*a maiden*	**Virgĭn-ēs**,	*maidens*
Gen.	**Virgĭn-ĭs**,	*of a maiden*	**Virgĭn-um**,	*of maidens*
Dat.	**Virgĭn-ī**,	*to* or *for a maiden*	**Virgĭn-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for maidens*
Abl.	**Virgĭn-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a maiden.*	**Virgĭn-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from maidens*

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Host-ĭs** (*c.*),	*an enemy*, or *O enemy*	**Host-ēs**,	*enemies*, or *O enemies*
Acc.	**Host-em**,	*an enemy*	**Host-ēs**,	*enemies*
Gen.	**Host-ĭs**,	*of an enemy*	**Host-ĭum**,	*of enemies*
Dat.	**Host-ī**,	*to* or *for an enemy*	**Host-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for enemies*
Abl.	**Host-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from an enemy.*	**Host-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from enemies.*

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined:—

N.V.	**Nūb-ēs** (*f.*),	*a cloud*, or *O cloud*	**Nūb-ēs**,	*clouds*, or *O clouds*
Acc.	**Nūb-em**,	*a cloud*	**Nūb-ēs**,	*clouds*
Gen.	**Nūb-ĭs**,	*of a cloud*	**Nūb-ĭum**,	*of clouds*
Dat.	**Nūb-ī**,	*to* or *for a cloud*	**Nūb-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for clouds*
Abl.	**Nūb-ĕ**,	*by*, *with*, or *from a cloud.*	**Nūb-ĭbŭs**,	*by*, *with*, or *from clouds.*

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

B. *Neuter Nouns.*

I. Stems ending in a Consonant.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Nōmĕn,**	*a name,* or *O name*	**Nōmĭn-ă,**	*names,* or *O names*
Gen.	**Nōmĭn-ĭs,**	*of a name*	**Nōmĭn-um,**	*of names*
Dat.	**Nōmĭn-ī,**	*to* or *for a name*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for names*
Abl.	**Nōmĭn-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a name.*	**Nōmĭn-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from names.*

N.V.A.	**Fulgŭr,**	*lightning,* or *O lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ă,**	*lightnings,* or *O lightnings*
Gen.	**Fulgŭr-ĭs,**	*of lightning*	**Fulgŭr-um,**	*of lightnings*
Dat.	**Fulgŭr-ī,**	*to* or *for lightning*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for lightnings*
Abl.	**Fulgŭr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from lightning.*	**Fulgŭr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from lightnings.*

N.V.A.	**Crūs,**	*a leg,* or *O leg*	**Crūr-ă,**	*legs,* or *O legs*
Gen.	**Crūr-ĭs,**	*of a leg*	**Crūr-um,**	*of legs*
Dat.	**Crūr-ī,**	*to* or *for a leg*	**Crūr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for legs*
Abl.	**Crūr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a leg.*	**Crūr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from legs.*

N.V.A.	**Ŏpŭs,**	*a work,* or *O work*	**Ŏpĕr-ă,**	*works,* or *O works*
Gen.	**Ŏpĕr-ĭs,**	*of a work*	**Ŏpĕr-um,**	*of works*
Dat.	**Ŏpĕr-ī,**	*to* or *for a work*	**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for works*
Abl.	**Ŏpĕr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a work.*	**Ŏpĕr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from works.*

N.V.A.	**Corpŭs,**	*a body,* or *O body*	**Corpŏr-ă,**	*bodies,* or *O bodies*
Gen.	**Corpŏr-ĭs,**	*of a body*	**Corpŏr-um,**	*of bodies*
Dat.	**Corpŏr-ī,**	*to* or *for a body*	**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for bodies*
Abl.	**Corpŏr-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a body.*	**Corpŏr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from bodies.*

6.

N.V.A.	**Căpŭt,**	*a head,* or *O head*	**Căpĭt-ă,**	*heads,* or *O heads*
Gen.	**Căpĭt-ĭs,**	*of a head*	**Căpĭt-um,**	*of heads*
Dat.	**Căpĭt-ī,**	*to* or *for a head*	**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for heads*
Abl.	**Căpĭt-ĕ,**	*by, with,* or *from a head.*	**Căpĭt-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from heads.*

II. Stems ending in I.

The Nominative in *ĕ*, *ăl*, *ăr*.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Măr-ĕ,**	*the sea,* or *O sea*	**Măr-ĭă,**	*seas,* or *O seas*
Gen.	**Măr-ĭs,**	*of the sea*	**Măr-ĭum,**	*of seas*
Dat.	**Măr-ī,**	*to* or *for the sea*	**Măr-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for seas*
Abl.	**Măr-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from the sea.*	**Măr-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from seas.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.A.	**Ănĭmăl,**	*an animal,* or *O animal*	**Ănĭmăl-ĭă,**	*animals,* or *O animals*
Gen.	**Ănĭmăl-ĭs,**	*of an animal*	**Ănĭmăl-ĭum,**	*of animals*
Dat.	**Ănĭmăl-ī,**	*to* or *for an animal*	**Ănĭmăl-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for animals*
Abl.	**Ănĭmăl-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from an animal.*	**Ănĭmăl-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from animals.*

8.

N.V.A.	**Calcăr,**	*a spur,* or *O spur*	**Calcār-ĭă,**	*spurs,* or *O spurs*
Gen.	**Calcār-ĭs,**	*of a spur*	**Calcār-ĭum,**	*of spurs*
Dat.	**Calcār-ī,**	*to* or *for a spur*	**Calcār-ĭbŭs,**	*to* or *for spurs*
Abl.	**Calcār-ī,**	*by, with,* or *from a spur.*	**Calcār-ĭbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from spurs.*

EXERCISE XII.

A.—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erát. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

B.—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent. 5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. **Magnus Dux,**—*a great leader.*

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Magnŭs dux**	**Magnī dŭcēs**
Voc.	**Magnĕ dux**	**Magnī dŭcēs**
Acc.	**Magnum dŭcem**	**Magnōs dŭcēs**
Gen.	**Magnī dŭcĭs**	**Magnōrum dŭcum**
Dat.	**Magnō dŭcī**	**Magnīs dŭcĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Magnō dŭcĕ**	**Magnīs dŭcĭbŭs.**

2. **Bŏnă Mātĕr,**—*a good mother.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	**Bŏnă mātĕr**	**Bŏnae mātrēs**
Acc.	**Bŏnam mātrem**	**Bŏnās mātrēs**
Gen.	**Bŏnae mātrĭs**	**Bŏnārum mātrum**
Dat.	**Bŏnae mātrī**	**Bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Bŏnā mātrĕ**	**Bŏnīs mātrĭbŭs.**

3. **Răpĭdum Flūmĕn,**—*a rapid river.*

N.V.A.	**Răpĭdum flūmĕn**	**Răpĭdă flūmĭnă**
Gen.	**Răpĭdī flūmĭnĭs**	**Răpĭdōrum flūmĭnum**
Dat.	**Răpĭdō flūmĭnī**	**Răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Răpĭdō flūmĭnĕ**	**Răpĭdīs flūmĭnĭbŭs.**

VIII.—Adjectives of the Third Declension.

I. Adjectives of Three Terminations end in ĕr, rĭs, rĕ, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, ācĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp;* cĕlĕr, cĕlĕrĭs, cĕlĕrĕ, *swift.*

	Sing. M.	F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
N.V.	**Ācĕr**	**ācrĭs**	**ācrĕ**	**Ācrēs**	**ācrĭă**
Acc.	**Ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācrĕ**	**Ācrēs**	**ācrĭă**
Gen.	**Ācrĭs**	**ācrĭs**	**ācrĭs.**	**Ācrĭum**	**ācrĭum**
Dat.	**Ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**Ācrĭbŭs**	**ācrĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**Ācrĭbŭs**	**ācrĭbŭs**

II. Adjectives of Two Terminations are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two terminations in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in ĭs: as, tristĭs (*masc.* and *fem.*), tristĕ (*neut.*), *sad.*
2. Comparatives, ending in ĭŏr, ĭŭs: as, mĕlĭŏr (*masc.* and *fem.*), mĕlĭŭs (*neut.*), *better.*

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
N.V.	**Trist-ĭs**	**trist-ĕ**	**Trist-ēs**	**trist-ĭă**
Acc.	**Trist-em**	**trist-ĕ**	**Trist-ēs**	**trist-ĭă**
Gen.	**Trist-ĭs**	**trist-ĭs**	**Trist-ĭum**	**trist-ĭum**
Dat.	**Trist-ī**	**trist-ī**	**Trist-ĭbŭs**	**trist-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Trist-ī**	**trist-ī**	**Trist-ĭbŭs**	**trist-ĭbŭs**

2.

N.V.	**Mĕlĭŏr**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-ēs**	**mĕlĭōr-ă**
Acc.	**Mĕlĭōr-em**	**mĕlĭŭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-ēs**	**mĕlĭōr-ă**
Gen.	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭs**	**Mĕlĭōr-um**	**mĕlĭōr-um**
Dat.	**Mĕlĭōr-ī**	**mĕlĭōr-ī**	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Mĕlĭōr-ĕ** *or* **ī**	**mĕlĭōr-ĕ** *or* **ī**	**Mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**	**mĕlĭōr-ĭbŭs**

III. Adjectives of One Termination are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: as, fēlix, *fortunate;* prūdens, *prudent.*

	Sing. M. and F.	N.	Plur. M. and F.	N.
N.V.	**Fēlix**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Acc.	**Fēlīc-em**	**fēlix**	**Fēlīc-ēs**	**fēlīc-ĭă**
Gen.	**Fēlīc-ĭs**	**fēlīc-ĭs**	**Fēlīc-ĭum**	**fēlīc-ĭum**
Dat.	**Fēlīc-ī**	**fēlīc-ī**	**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	**fēlīc-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Fēlīc-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**fēlīc-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**Fēlīc-ĭbŭs**	**fēlīc-ĭbŭs**

2.

N.V.	**Prūdens**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Acc.	**Prūdent-em**	**prūdens**	**Prūdent-ēs**	**prūdent-ĭă**
Gen.	**Prūdent-ĭs**	**prūdent-ĭs**	**Prūdent-ĭum**	**prūdent-ĭum**
Dat.	**Prūdent-ī**	**prūdent-ī**	**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	**prūdent-ĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Prūdent-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**prūdent-ī** *or* **ĕ**	**Prūdent-ĭbŭs**	**prūdent-ĭbŭs**

Adjectives of Third Declension, declined with Nouns of First, Second, and Third Declensions.

1. Cĕlĕrĭs Săgittă,—*a swift arrow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	**Cĕlĕrĭs săgittă**	**Cĕlĕrēs săgittae**
Acc.	**Cĕlĕrem săgittam**	**Cĕlĕrēs săgittas**
Gen.	**Cĕlĕrĭs săgittae**	**Cĕlĕrum săgittārum**
Dat.	**Cĕlĕrī săgittae**	**Cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgittīs**
Abl.	**Cĕlĕrī săgittā**	**Cĕlĕrĭbŭs săgittīs**

2. Tristĕ Proelium,—*a sad battle.*

N.A.V.	**Tristĕ proelĭum**	**Tristĭă proelĭă**
Gen.	**Tristĭs proelĭī**	**Tristĭum proelĭōrum**
Dat.	**Tristī proelĭō**	**Tristĭbŭs proelĭīs**
Abl.	**Tristī proelĭō**	**Tristĭbŭs proelĭīs**

3. Fēlix Hŏmo,—*a happy man.*

N.V.	**Fēlix hŏmo**	**Fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs**
Acc.	**Fēlīcem hŏmĭnem**	**Fēlīcēs hŏmĭnēs**
Gen.	**Fēlīcĭs hŏmĭnĭs**	**Fēlīcĭum hŏmĭnum**
Dat.	**Fēlīcī hŏmĭnī**	**Fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Fēlīcī** *or* **ĕ hŏmĭnĕ**	**Fēlīcĭbŭs hŏmĭnĭbŭs**

Exercise XIII.

A.—1. Ira furor brevis est. 2. Ira militum erat acris. 3. Via est facilis. 4. Omne initium est difficile. 5. Leges hominibus utiles sunt. 6. Vulnus militis est leve. 7. Carmen est dulce. 8. Naves hostium sunt celeres. 9. Tempus humanae vitae breve est. 10. Rex cives fideles habet.

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

B.—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricolae vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

IX.—The Fourth or U Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in ŭs, and of Neuter Nouns in u.

1.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N. V.	**Grăd-ŭs** (*m.*),	*a step*, or *O step*	**Grăd-ūs**,	*steps*, or *O steps*
Acc.	**Grăd-um**,	*a step*	**Grăd-ūs**,	*steps*
Gen.	**Grăd-ūs**,	*of a step*	**Grăd-ŭum**,	*of steps*
Dat.	**Grăd-ŭī**,	*to* or *for a step*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for steps*
Abl.	**Grăd-ū**,	*by, with,* or *from a step.*	**Grăd-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from steps.*

2.

N. V. A.	**Gĕn-ū** (*n.*),	*a knee* or *O knee*	**Gĕn-ŭă**,	*knees*, or *O knees*
Gen.	**Gĕn-ūs**,	*of a knee*	**Gĕn-ŭum**,	*of knees*
Dat.	**Gĕn-ū**,	*to* or *for a knee*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs**,	*to* or *for knees*
Abl.	**Gĕn-ū**,	*by, with,* or *from a knee.*	**Gĕn-ĭbŭs**,	*by, with,* or *from knees.*

Note.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ŭbŭs: as, ăcŭbŭs, arcŭbŭs, portŭbŭs, vĕrŭbŭs, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular ŭī is sometimes contracted into ū: as, grădŭī, grădū.

Exercise XIV.

A.—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficūs erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

B.—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

* Quĕ, *and* (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

X.—The Fifth or E Declension.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in ēs.

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*a day*, or *O day*	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*days*, or *O days*
Acc.	**Dĭ-em,**	*a day*	**Dĭ-ēs,**	*days*
Gen.	**Dĭ-ēī,**	*of a day*	**Dĭ-ērum,**	*of days*
Dat.	**Dĭ-ēī,**	*to* or *for a day*	**Dĭ-ēbŭs,**	*to* or *for days*
Abl.	**Dĭ-ē,**	*by, with,* or *from a day.*	**Dĭ-ēbŭs,**	*by, with,* or *from days.*

Note.—In Nouns like rēs, where ēs is preceded by a Consonant, the e becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, rĕī, spĕī.

Gender.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except **dĭēs**, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and **mĕrīdĭēs**, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

Rule 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in*: as, hostēs ĭn plānĭtĭē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.* See Rule 7, p. 13.

Exercise XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnities.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

XI.—Some Irregular Nouns.

The following words are thus declined :—

Dĕŭs, *m.*, *God.* (2 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	**Dĕŭs**	**Dĕī, Dīī,** *or* **Dī**
Acc.	**Dĕum**	**Dĕōs**
Gen.	**Dĕī**	**Dĕōrum,** *or* **Deûm**
Dat.	**Dĕō**	**Dĕīs, Dīīs,** *or* **Dīs**
Abl.	**Dĕō**	**Dĕīs, Dīīs,** *or* **Dīs**

Dŏmŭs, *f.*, *a house.* (2 and 4 Decl.)

Sing.	Plur.
Dŏmŭs	**Dŏmūs**
Dŏmum	**Dŏmōs** (*rarely* **dŏmūs**)
Dŏmūs	**Dŏmŭum,** *or* **dŏmōrum**
Dŏmŭī	**Dŏmĭbŭs**
Dŏmō	**Dŏmĭbŭs**

N.B. The form *dŏmī* is used only in the sense of *at home.*

Bōs, *c.*, *an ox* or *cow.* (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	**Bōs**	**Bŏvēs**
Acc.	**Bŏvem**	**Bŏvēs**
Gen.	**Bŏvĭs**	**Bŏvum,** *or* **bŏum**
Dat.	**Bŏvī**	**Bōbŭs,** *or* **būbŭs**
Abl.	**Bŏvĕ**	**Bōbŭs,** *or* **būbŭs.**

Sĕnex, *m.*, *an old man.* (3 Decl.)

Sing.	Plur.
Sĕnex	**Sĕnēs**
Sĕnem	**Sĕnēs**
Sĕnĭs	**Sĕnum**
Sĕnī	**Sĕnĭbŭs**
Sĕnĕ	**Sĕnĭbŭs**

Vīs, *f.*, *strength.* (3 Decl.)

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**Vīs**	**Vīrēs**
Acc.	**Vim**	**Vīrēs**
Gen.	wanting	**Vīrĭum**
Dat.	wanting	**Vīrĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Vī**	**Vīrĭbŭs**

Jūpĭtĕr (=Jŏv-pĭtĕr, *i. e.* pătĕr), (3 Decl.) *the god.*

Sing.	
Jūpĭtĕr	No plural.
Jŏvem	
Jŏvĭs	
Jŏvī	
Jŏvĕ	

Jusjūrandum, *n.*, *an oath* (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl. and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

	Sing.	
N.V.A.	**Jusjūrandum**	No plural.
Gen.	**Jūrisjūrandī**	
Dat.	**Jūrījūrandō**	
Abl.	**Jūrĕjūrandō**	

Respublĭca, *f.*, *a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, Res, 5 Decl. and publĭcă, 1 Decl.).

	Sing.	
N.V.	**Respublĭcă**	No plural.
Acc.	**Rempublĭcam**	
Gen.	**Rĕīpublĭcae**	
Dat.	**Rĕīpublĭcae**	
Abl.	**Rēpublĭcā**	

Exercise XVI.

A.—1. Dī sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many

trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in he houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were nany brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were ew. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are acied to Jupiter.

* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

XII.—Some Irregular Adjectives.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. īŭs (rarely ĭŭs) and in the Dative ī:—

ūnŭs, ă, um, *one, alone.*
sōlŭs, ă, um, *alone.*
tōtŭs, ă, um, *whole.*
ullŭs, ă, um, *any.*
nullŭs, ă, um, *no, none.*
ŭtĕr, utră, utrum, *which of two.*
neutĕr, neutră, neutrum, *neither.*

ăltĕr, altĕră, altĕrum, *one of two;* altĕr . . . . altĕr, *the one* . . . . *the other.*
ălĭŭs, ălĭă, ălĭŭd, *one of any number;* ălĭŭs . . . . ălĭŭs, *one* . . . . *another;* in pl. *some, others.*

For example—

	Sing. M.	Sing. F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M.	Plur. F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Ūn-ŭs**	**ūn-ă**	**ūn-um**	**Ūn-ī**	**ūn-ae**	**ūn-ă**
Acc.	**Ūn-um**	**ūn-am**	**ūn-um**	**Ūn-ōs**	**ūn-ās**	**ūn-ă**
Gen.	**Ūn-īŭs**			**Ūn-ōrum**	**ūn-ārum**	**ūn-ōrum**
Dat.	**Ūn-ī**			**Ūn-īs**		
Abl.	**Ūn-ō**	**ūn-ā**	**ūn-ō**	**Ūn-īs**		

Obs. As to the use of the Plural of *ūnŭs*, see p. 26.
The Genitive Singular of altĕr is *altĕrĭŭs*, and of ălĭŭs is *ălĭŭs*.

Exercise XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat veram voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alīus (*gen.*) vires, alīus (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita

hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudem, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totam laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

XIII.—Comparison of Adjectives.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Altŭs, *high.*	**Altĭŏr**, *higher.*	**Altissĭmŭs**, *highest, most high,* or *very high.*

The Comparative is formed by adding *ĭŏr* and the Superlative by adding *issĭmŭs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Posit. Nom.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
Altŭs,	**Alt-ī**,	*high*,	**Alt-ĭŏr**,	**Alt-issĭmŭs**,
Lĕvĭs,	**Lĕv-ĭs**,	*light*,	**Lĕv-ĭŏr**,	**Lĕv-issĭmŭs**,
Fēlix,	**Fēlīc-ĭs**,	*fortunate*,	**Fēlīc-ĭŏr**,	**Fēlīc-issĭmŭs**,
Prūdens,	**Prūdent-ĭs**,	*prudent*,	**Prūdent-ĭŏr**,	**Prūdent-issĭmŭs.**

The Comparative is declined on p. 18 (mĕl-ĭŏr). The Superlative is declined like bŏnus, bŏna, bŏnum.

Exceptions.—I. Adjectives ending in **ĕr** form the Superlative in **rĭmŭs**: as,

Posit. Nom.	Gen.		Comp.	Sup.
pulchĕr,	pulchr-ī,	*beautiful*,	pulchr-ĭor,	pulcher-rĭmŭs.
lībĕr,	lībĕr-ī,	*free*,	lībĕr-ĭor,	līber-rĭmŭs.
ăcĕr,	ăcr-ĭs,	*sharp*,	ăcr-ĭor,	ăcer-rĭmŭs.
cĕlĕr,	cĕlĕr-ĭs,	*swift*,	cĕlĕr-ĭor,	cĕler-rĭmŭs.

Also **vĕtŭs** (*Gen.* **vĕtĕr-is**), *old*, has a Superlative, **vĕter-rĭmŭs.**

II. The following six Adjectives ending in **ĭlĭs** form their Superlative in **lĭmŭs**: as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
făcĭlĭs,	*easy*,	**făcĭl-ĭor**,	**făcil-lĭmŭs.**
diffĭcĭlĭs,	*difficult*,	**diffĭcĭl-ĭor**,	**diffĭcil-lĭmŭs.**
sĭmĭlĭs,	*like*,	**sĭmĭl-ĭor**,	**sĭmil-lĭmŭs.**
dissĭmĭlĭs,	*unlike*,	**dissĭmĭl-ĭor**,	**dissĭmil-lĭmŭs.**
grăcĭlĭs,	*thin*,	**grăcĭl-ĭor**,	**grăcil-lĭmŭs.**
hŭmĭlĭs,	*low*,	**hŭmĭl-ĭor**,	**hŭmil-lĭmŭs.**

III. Adjectives ending in dĭcŭs, fĭcŭs, and vŏlŭs, form their Comparatives in entĭŏr and their Superlatives in entissĭmŭs: as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
mălĕdĭcŭs,	*slanderous*,	mălĕdĭcentĭŏr,	mălĕdĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕfĭcŭs,	*beneficent*,	bĕnĕfĭcentĭŏr,	bĕnĕfĭcentissĭmŭs.
bĕnĕvŏlŭs,	*benevolent*,	bĕnĕvŏlentĭŏr,	bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmŭs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb măgĭs, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb maxĭmē, *most:* as, noxĭŭs, *hurtful;* măgĭs noxĭŭs, *more hurtful;* maxĭmē noxĭŭs, *most hurtful.*

Irregular Comparison.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bŏnus,	*good*,	mĕlĭor,	optĭmŭs.
mălus,	*bad*,	pējor,	pessĭmŭs.
magnus,	*great*,	mājor,	maxĭmŭs.
parvus,	*small*,	mĭnor,	mĭnĭmŭs.
multus,	*much*,	plūs (*see below*),	plūrĭmŭs.
nēquam (*not declined*),	*worthless*,	nēquĭor,	nēquissĭmŭs.
dīves,	*rich*,	dītĭor,	dītissĭmŭs.
sĕnex,	*old*,	sĕnĭor [nātū mājor],	[nātū maxĭmŭs].
jŭvĕnis,	*young*,	jūnĭor [nātū mĭnŏr],	[nātū mĭnĭmŭs].
sŭpĕrus,	*upper*,	sŭpĕrĭor,	suprēmŭs, summŭs.
infĕrus,	*lower*,	infĕrĭor,	infĭmŭs, īmŭs.
extĕrus,	*outside*,	extĕrĭor,	extrēmŭs, extĭmŭs.
intĕrus,	*inside*,	intĕrĭor,	intĭmŭs.
postĕrus,	*behind*,	posterĭor,	postrēmŭs, postŭmŭs.
—	—	prĭor (*former*),	prīmŭs (*first*).
—	—	prŏpĭor (*nearer*),	proxĭmŭs (*nearest, next*).
—	—	ultĕrĭor (*further*),	ultĭmŭs (*furthest, last*).

	Singular. Neut. only.	Plural. Masc. and Fem.	Plural. Neut.
Nom. & Acc.	**Plūs**	**Plūrēs**	**Plūră**
Gen.	**Plūrĭs**	**Plūrĭum**	**Plūrĭum**
Dat.	**Plūrī**	**Plūrĭbŭs**	**Plūrĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Plūrĕ**	**Plūrĭbŭs**	**Plūrĭbŭs**

Rule 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin **quam** (indeclinable).

Exercise XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima

urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

B.—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperrimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

XIV.—The Numerals.

Cardinal Numerals denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnŭs, *one;* dŭŏ, *two;* trēs, *three.*

The declension of ūnŭs is given on p. 23.

Obs. *Ūnŭs* is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, *one camp;* ūnae aedēs, *one house;* ūnae littĕrae, *one letter.*

Arabic Symbols.	Roman Symbols.	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	I	ūnus	prīmus.
2	II	dŭŏ	sĕcundus *or* altĕr.
3	III	trēs	tertĭus.
4	IV	quattŭŏr (quāttŭŏr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquĕ	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septĭmus.
8	VIII	octŏ	octāvus.
9	IX	nŏvem	nōnus.
10	X	dĕcem	dĕcĭmus.
11	XI	undĕcim	undĕcĭmus.
12	XII	duŏdĕcim	duŏdĕcĭmus.
13	XIII	trĕdĕcim	tertĭus dĕcĭmus.
14	XIV	quattŭordĕcim	quartus dĕcĭmus.
15	XV	quīndĕcim	quintus dĕcĭmus.
16	XVI	sēdĕcim	sextus dĕcĭmus.
17	XVII	septemdĕcim	septĭmus dĕcĭmus.
18	XVIII	duŏdēvīginti	duŏdēvīcēsĭmus.
19	XIX	undēvīgintī	undēvīcēsĭmus.
20	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsĭmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī *or* vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus prīmus.
22	XXII	duŏ et vīgintī *or* vīgintī duŏ	alter et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī *or* vīgintī trēs	tertĭus et vīcēsĭmus, *or* vīcēsĭmus tertĭus.
28	XXVIII	duŏdētrīgintā	duŏdētrīgēsĭmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsĭmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsĭmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsĭmus.
50	L	quinquāgintā	quinquāgēsĭmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsĭmus.
70	LXX	septŭāgintā	septŭāgēsĭmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsĭmus.
90	XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsĭmus.
100	C	centum	centēsĭmus.
200	CC	dŭcentī, ae, ă	ducentēsĭmus.
300	CCC	trĕcentī, ae, ă	trĕcentēsĭmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, ae, ă	quadringentēsĭmus.
500	D *or* IƆ	quingentī, ae, ă	quingentēsĭmus.
600	DC	sexcentī, ae, ă	sexcentēsĭmus.
700	DCC	septingentī, ae, ă	septingentēsĭmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, ae, ă	octingentēsĭmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ă	nongentēsĭmus.
1,000	M *or* CIƆ	millĕ	millēsĭmus.
2,000	MM	duŏ millĭă	bis millēsĭmus.
100,000	CCCIƆƆƆ	centum millĭă	centiēs millēsĭmus.

Dŭŏ, *two*, trēs, *three*, and millĭă, *thousands*, are declined as follows:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	**Dŭ-ŏ**	**dŭ-ae**	**dŭ-ŏ**	**Trēs**	**trĭă**	**Millĭă**
Acc.	**Dŭ-ōs** *or* **dŭ-ŏ**	**dŭ-ās**	**dŭ-ŏ**	**Trēs** *or* **trīs**	**trĭă**	**Millĭă**
Gen.	**Dŭ-ōrum**	**dŭ-ārum**	**dŭ-ōrum**	**Trĭum**	**trĭum**	**Millĭum**
Dat.	**Dŭ-ōbŭs**	**dŭ-ābŭs**	**dŭ-ōbŭs**	**Trĭbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	**Millĭbŭs**
Abl.	**Dŭ-ōbŭs**	**dŭ-ābŭs**	**dŭ-ōbŭs**	**Trĭbŭs**	**trĭbŭs**	**Millĭbŭs**

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like dŭŏ.

Millĕ, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but millĭă, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millĕ hŏmĭnēs, *a thousand men;* but dŭŏ millĭă hŏmĭnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men.*

The Cardinal Numerals from quattŭŏr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, prīmŭs, *first;* sĕcundŭs, or altĕr, *second.* They are declined regularly as adjectives.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.*

* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—The Verb Sum, *I am.*

Sum, fŭī, fŭtūrŭs, essĕ,—*to be.* **Stem: ĕs-, fu-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Sum,**	*I am*	*Plur.*	**Sŭmŭs,**	*We are*
	Ĕs,	*thou art*		**Estĭs,**	*ye are.*
	Est,	*he is.*		**Sunt,**	*they are.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕram,**	*I was*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrāmŭs,**	*We were*
	Ĕrās,	*thou wast*		**Ĕrātĭs,**	*ye were*
	Ĕrăt,	*he was.*		**Ĕrant,**	*they were.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕro,**	*I shall be*	*Plur.*	**Ĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall be*
	Ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt be*		**Ĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will be*
	Ĕrĭt,	*he will be.*		**Ĕrunt,**	*they will be.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuī,**	*I have been,* or *I was*	*Plur.*	**Fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been,* or *we were*
	Fuistī,	*thou hast been,* or *thou wast*		**Fuistĭs,**	*ye have been,* or *ye were*
	Fuĭt,	*he has been,* or *he was.*		**Fuērunt** or **fuērĕ**	*they have been,* or *they were.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕram,**	*I had been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been*
	Fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been*		**Fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been*
	Fuĕrăt,	*he had been.*		**Fuĕrant,**	*they had been.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Fuĕro,**	*I shall have been*	*Plur.*	**Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been*
	Fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been*		**Fuĕritĭs,**	*ye will have been*
	Fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been.*		**Fuĕrint,**	*they will have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ĕs,**	*Be thou.*	*Plur.*	**Estĕ,**	*Be ye.*

2. Future Tense.

Sing.	**Estō,**	*Thou shalt* or *must be*	*Plur.*	**Estōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must be*
	Estō,	*he shall* or *must be.*		**Suntō,**	*they shall* or *must be.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing. **Sim,**	*I may be*	*Plur.* **Sīmŭs,**	*We may be*
Sīs,	*thou mayst be*	**Sītĭs,**	*ye may be*
Sĭt,	*he may be.*	**Sint,**	*they may be.*

Obs. The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, sint cīvēs justī, *let the citizens be just.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. **Essem** or **fŏrem,**	*I might be*	*Plur.* **Essēmŭs** or **fŏrēmŭs,**	*We might be*
Essēs or **fŏrēs,**	*thou mightst be*	**Essētĭs** or **fŏrētĭs,**	*ye might be*
Essĕt or **fŏrĕt,**	*he might be.*	**Essent** or **fŏrent,**	*they might be.*

3. Perfect Tense.

Sing. **Fuĕrim,**	*I may have been*	*Plur.* **Fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been*
Fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been*	**Fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been*
Fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been.*	**Fuĕrint,**	*they may have been.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing. **Fuissem,**	*I should have been*	*Plur.* **Fuissēmŭs,**	*We should have been*
Fuissēs,	*thou wouldst have been*	**Fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been*
Fuissĕt,	*he would have been.*	**Fuissent,**	*they would have been.*

VERB INFINITE.

Infinitive Present, and Imperfect,	**Essĕ,**	*to be.*
Infinitive Perfect, and Pluperfect,	**Fuissĕ,**	*to have been.*
Infinitive Future,	**Fŭtūrŭs essĕ,** or **fŏrĕ,**	*to be about to be.*
Participle Future,	**Fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um,**	*about to be.*

Note.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

Obs. **Fŭtūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, fŭtūrŭs sum, *I am about to be;* fŭtūrŭs ĕram, *I was about to be,* &c.

Exercise XX.

The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.

A.—1. Sum laetus. 2. Es tristis. 3. Non diligens fuisti, Tite. 4. Probi filii gaudium patris erunt. 5. Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia. 6. Dux vester ero: victores erimus. 7. Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis. 8. Multi erunt pauperes, qui (*who*) divites fuerant. 9. Cives urbis liberae sumus. 10. Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen.

4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

Imperative Mood.

B.—1. Judex custos severus juris esto. 2. Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis. 3. Discipuli sunto attenti. 4. Judices justi sunto. 5. Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto. 6. Amici fideles sunto. 7. Reges patres patriae sunto. 8. Attenti este, discipuli. 9. Contenti estote sorte vestra. 10. Praeceptorum memores este.

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented; they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (sint) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—Compounds of Sum.

Absum,	*I am absent.*
Adsum,	*I am present, stand by, side with.*
Dēsum,	*I am wanting.*
Insum,	*I am in.*
Intersum,	*I am among.*
Obsum,	*I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*
Praesum,	*I am before, am at the head of.*
Prōsum,	*I am serviceable, do good to.*
Subsum,	*I am under,* or *amongst.*
Sŭpersum,	*I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *d* before *e*: as,

Indicative.

Present.

Sing.	Prō-sum	*Plur.*	Prō-sŭmŭs
	Prōd-ĕs		Prōd-estĭs
	Prōd-est.		Prō-sunt.

Imperfect. Prōd-ĕram, &c.

Future. Prōd-ĕro, &c.

Infinitive—*Present.*

Prōd-esse.

Exercise XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variae cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

XVII.—The Pronouns.

I. Personal Pronouns.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	**Ĕgŏ,**	*I*	**Nōs,**	*we*
Acc.	**Mē,**	*me*	**Nōs,**	*us*
Gen.	**Mĕī,**	*of me*	**Nostrī** *or* **nostrum,**	*of us*
Dat.	**Mĭhi,**	*to* or *for me*	**Nōbīs,**	*to* or *for us*
Abl.	**Mē,**	*by, with,* or *from me.*	**Nōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from us*

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.	
N.V.	**Tū,**	*thou*	**Vōs,**	*ye*
Acc.	**Tē,**	*thee*	**Vōs,**	*you*
Gen.	**Tŭī,**	*of thee*	**Vestrī** *or* **vestrum,**	*of you*
Dat.	**Tĭbi,**	*to* or *for thee*	**Vōbīs,**	*to* or *for you*
Abl.	**Tē,**	*by, with,* or *from thee.*	**Vōbīs,**	*by, with,* or *from you.*

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it,* ĭs, ĕă, ĭd is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

II. Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

		Sing. and Plur.
Acc.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Gen.	**Suī,**	*of himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Dat	**Sĭbi,**	*to* or *for himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*
Abl.	**Sē** *or* **sēsē,**	*by* or *from himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves.*

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as mei, *of myself;* tibi, *to thyself,* etc.

III. Possessive Pronouns.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
Mĕus,	**mĕa,**	**mĕum,**	*my* or *mine.*
Tŭus,	**tŭa,**	**tŭum,**	*thy* or *thine.*
Noster,	**nostra,**	**nostrum,**	*our, ours.*
Vester,	**vestra,**	**vestrum,**	*your, yours.*
Sŭus,	**sŭa,**	**sŭum,**	*his, her, its, their*

Exercise XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunto. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

IV. Demonstrative Pronouns.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this* (*near me*); pl. *these*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**Hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Acc.	**Hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**Hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Gen.	**Hūjus**			**Hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**Huic**			**Hīs**		
Abl.	**Hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**Hīs**		

2. Istĕ, istă, istŭd, *that* (*near you*), *that of yours*; pl. *those*.

Nom.	**Istĕ**	**istă**	**istŭd**	**Istī**	**istae**	**istă**
Acc.	**Istum**	**istam**	**istŭd**	**Istōs**	**istās**	**istă**
Gen.	**Istīus**			**Istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**Istī**			**Istīs**		
Abl.	**Istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**Istīs**		

3. Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that*, *that yonder*; pl. *those*.

Nom.	**Illĕ**	**illă**	**illŭd**	**Illī**	**illae**	**illă**
Acc.	**Illum**	**illam**	**illŭd**	**Illōs**	**illās**	**illă**
Gen.	**Illīus**			**Illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**Illī**			**Illīs**		
Abl.	**Illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**Illīs**		

Exercise XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt. 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poëtae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. Determinate, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns.

1. Ĭs, eă, ĭd, *he, she, it, that,* referring to the former part of a sentence.

	Sing. M.	Sing. F.	Sing. N.	Plur. M.	Plur. F.	Plur. N.
Nom.	**Ĭs**	**eă**	**ĭd**	**Iī**	**eae**	**eă**
Acc.	**Eum**	**eam**	**ĭd**	**Eōs**	**eās**	**eă**
Gen.	**Ējus**			**Eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**Eī**			**Iīs** *or* **eīs**		
Abl.	**Eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**Iīs** *or* **eīs**		

2. Īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Īdem**	**eădem**	**ĭdem**	**Iīdem**	**eaedem**	**eădem**
Acc.	**Eundem.**	**eandem**	**ĭdem**	**Eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eădem**
Gen.	**Ējusdem**			**Eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**Eīdem**			**Iīsdem** *or* **eīsdem**		
Abl.	**Eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**Iīsdem** *or* **eīsdem**		

3. Ipsĕ, ipsă, ipsum, *self, himself, herself, itself.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Ipsĕ**	**ipsă**	**ipsum**	**Ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsă**
Acc.	**Ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**Ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsă**
Gen.	**Ipsīus**			**Ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**Ipsī**			**Ipsīs**		
Abl.	**Ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**Ipsīs**		

4. Relative—Quī, quae, quŏd, *who* or *which.*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Quī**	**quae**	**quŏd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quŏd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjus**			**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cuī**			**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		

5. Interrogative—Quĭs or quī, quae, quĭd or quŏd, *who? which? what?*

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**Quĭs** *or* **quī**	**quae**	**quĭd** *or* **quŏd**	**Quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Acc.	**Quem**	**quam**	**quĭd** *or* **quŏd**	**Quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Gen.	**Cūjus**			**Quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**Cuī**			**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		
Abl.	**Quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**Quĭbus** *or* **quīs**		

The forms **quis** and **quĭd** are used by themselves, without a Noun: as, Quĭs es? *who art thou?* Quĭd est? *what is it?* The forms **quī** and **quŏd** are used interrogatively with a Noun: as, Quī hŏmo ĕs? *what man art thou?* Quŏd mărĕ, *what sea?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, Fēlix est rex quem omnēs cīvēs laudant, *Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Lĕgĭt, (*he, she, it*) *reads.* **Lĕgunt,** (*they*) *read.*

EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est.*

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 3.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudens) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices:

I. ACTIVE. II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have two Parts:

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. THE VERB FINITE has Three Moods:

(1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.
(2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
(3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. THE VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives:

(1.) The INFINITIVE, which is a Verbal Noun.
(2.) The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.
(3.) The SUPINE, } which are Verbal Nouns.
(4.) The GERUND, }

Verbs have SIX TENSES:

I. Three expressing unfinished action:

Present.
Imperfect.
Future Simple.

II. Three expressing finished action:

Perfect.
Pluperfect.
Future Perfect.

Obs The Perfect has the meaning of both a Present-Perfect and of an Indefinite-Past: thus, ămāvī signifies, *I have loved*, and *I loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Infinitive Active. The Stem of

			Infinitive.
I. The First	Conjugation ends in	**A**:	as, **ămā-rĕ**, *to love*.
II. The Second	,, ,,	**E**:	as, **mŏnē-rĕ**, *to advise*.
III. The Third	,, ,,	{**a Consonant** or **U**:}	as, {**rĕg-ĕrĕ**, *to rule*. / **lu-ĕrĕ**, *to pay*.}
IV. The Fourth	,, ,,	**I**:	as, **audī-rĕ**, *to hear*.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the ***Principal Parts*** of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.

XIX.—First or A Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Ămo, ămāvī, ămātum, ămārĕ,—*to love.* **Stem: ăma-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ămo,**	*I love,* or *am loving*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-āmŭs,**	*We love,* or *are loving*
	Ăm-ās,	*thou lovest,* or *art loving*		**Ăm-ātĭs,**	*ye love,* or *are loving*
	Ăm-ăt,	*he loves,* or *is loving,*		**Ăm-ant,**	*they love,* or *are loving.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-ābam,**	*I was loving*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-ābāmŭs,**	*We were loving*
	Ăm-ābās,	*thou wast loving*		**Ăm-ābātĭs,**	*ye were loving*
	Ăm-ābăt,	*he was loving.*		**Ăm-ābant,**	*they were loving.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-ābo,**	*I shall love*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-ābĭmŭs,**	*We shall love*
	Ăm-ābĭs,	*thou wilt love*		**Ăm-ābĭtĭs,**	*ye will love*
	Ăm-ābĭt,	*he will love.*		**Ăm-ābunt,**	*they will love.*

4. Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-āvī,**	*I have loved,* or *I loved*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-āvĭmŭs,**	*We have loved,* or *we loved*
	Ăm-āvistī,	*thou hast loved,* or *thou lovedst*		**Ăm-āvistĭs,**	*ye have loved,* or *ye loved*
	Ăm-āvĭt,	*he has loved,* or *he loved.*		**Ăm-āvērunt,** *or* **ăm-āvērĕ**	*they have loved,* or *they loved.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-āvĕram,**	*I had loved*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-āvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had loved*
	Ăm-āvĕrās,	*thou hadst loved*		**Ăm-āvĕrātĭs,**	*ye had loved*
	Ăm-āvĕrăt,	*he had loved.*		**Ăm-āvĕrant,**	*they had loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-āvĕro,**	*I shall have loved.*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-āvĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall have loved.*
	Ăm-āvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have loved.*		**Ăm-āvĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have loved.*
	Ăm-āvĕrĭt,	*he will have loved.*		**Ăm-āvĕrint,**	*they will have loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-ā,**	*Love thou.*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-ātĕ,**	*Love ye.*

Future Tense.

Sing.	**Ăm-āto,**	*Thou shalt* or *must love*	*Plur.*	**Ăm-ātōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must love*
	Ăm-āto,	*he shall* or *must love.*		**Ăm-anto,**	*they shall* or *must love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

1. Present Tense.

Sing. **Ăm-em,**	*I may love*	*Plur.* **Ăm-ēmŭs,**	*We may love*
Ăm-ēs,	*thou mayst love*	**Ăm-ētĭs,**	*ye may love*
Ăm-ĕt,	*he may love.*	**Ăm-ent,**	*they may love.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

Sing. **Ăm-ārem,**	*I might love*	*Plur.* **Ăm-ārēmŭs,**	*We might love*
Ăm-ārēs,	*thou mightst love*	**Ăm-ārētĭs,**	*ye might love*
Ăm-ārĕt,	*he might love.*	**Ăm-ārent,**	*they might love.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-āvĕrim,**	*I may* } *have loved.*	*P.* **Ăm-āvĕrimŭs,**	*We may* } *have loved.*
Ăm-āvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst*	**Ăm-āvĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye may*
Ăm-āvĕrĭt,	*he may*	**Ăm-āvĕrint,**	*they may*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-āvissem,**	*I should* } *have loved.*	*P.* **Ăm-āvissēmŭs,**	*We should* } *have loved.*
Ăm-āvissēs,	*thou wouldst*	**Ăm-āvissētĭs,**	*ye would*
Ăm-āvissĕt,	*he would*	**Ăm-āvissent,**	*they would*

* The 1st and 3rd Persons of the Present Subjunctive are often used with a kind of Imperative sense: ămem, *let me love;* ămĕt, *let him love;* ămēmŭs, *let us love.* Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood in general, see p. 47.

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imp.	**Ăm-ārĕ,**	*to love.*
Perf. and Plup.	**Ăm-āvissĕ,**	*to have loved.*
Future.	**Ăm-ātūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Ăm-andī,**	*of loving*
Dat.	**Ăm-andō,**	*for loving*
Acc.	**Ăm-andum,**	*loving*
Abl.	**Ăm-andō,**	*by loving.*

SUPINES.

Ăm-ātum,	*to love.*
Ăm-ātū,	*in loving,* or *to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. **Ăm-ans, -antis,** *loving.*
Future. **Ăm-ātūrŭs (ă, um),** *about to love.*

Obs. **Ămātūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, ămātūrŭs sum, *I am about to love;* ămātūrus ĕram, *I was about to love,* &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation.*

Note.—In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r:* as,

ămāvistī	becomes	ămastī
ămāvistĭs	,,	ămastĭs
ămāvērunt	,,	ămārunt
ămāvĕro	becomes	ămāro
ămāvĕram	,,	ămāram
ămāvĕrim	,,	ămārim
ămāvissem	,,	ămassem
ămāvissĕ	,,	ămassĕ

but ămāvērĕ does not become ămārĕ, which would be confounded with the Present Infin.

XX.—Second or E Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Mŏneo, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtum, mŏnērĕ,—*to advise.* Stem: **mŏne-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Mŏn-eo,**	*I advise,* or *am advising*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēmŭs,**	*We advise,* or *are advising*
Mŏn-ēs,	*thou advisest,* or *art advising*	**Mŏn-ētĭs,**	*ye advise,* or *are advising*
Mŏn-ĕt,	*he advises,* or *is advising.*	**Mŏn-ent,**	*they advise,* or *are advising.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbam,**	*I was advising*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were advising*
Mŏn-ēbās,	*thou wast advising*	**Mŏn-ēbātĭs,**	*ye were advising*
Mŏn-ēbăt,	*he was advising.*	**Mŏn-ēbant,**	*they were advising.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbo,**	*I shall advise*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,**	*We shall advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭs,	*thou wilt advise*	**Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,**	*ye will advise*
Mŏn-ēbĭt,	*he will advise.*	**Mŏn-ēbunt,**	*they will advise.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-uī,**	*I have advised,* or *I advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-uĭmŭs,**	*We have advised,* or *we advised*
Mŏn-uistī,	*thou hast advised,* or *advisedst*	**Mŏn-uistĭs,**	*ye have advised,* or *ye advised*
Mŏn-uĭt,	*he has advised,* or *he advised.*	**Mŏn-uērunt,** or **-uērĕ,**	*they have advised,* or *they advised.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-uĕram,**	*I had advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-uĕrāmŭs,**	*We had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrās,	*thou hadst advised*	**Mŏn-uĕrātĭs,**	*ye had advised*
Mŏn-uĕrăt,	*he had advised.*	**Mŏn-uĕrant,**	*they had advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-uĕro,**	*I shall have advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have advised*
Mŏn-uĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have advised*	**Mŏn-uĕritĭs,**	*ye will have advised*
Mŏn-uĕrĭt,	*he will have advised*	**Mŏn-uĕrint,**	*they will have advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ē,**	*Advise thou.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ētĕ,**	*Advise ye.*

Future Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēto,**	*Thou shalt* or *must advise*	*P.* **Mŏn-ētōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must advise*
Mŏn-ēto,	*he shall* or *must advise.*	**Mŏn-ento,**	*they shall* or *must advise.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-eam,** *I may advise*		P.	**Mŏn-eāmŭs,** *We may advise*
	Mŏn-eās, *thou mayst advise*			**Mŏn-eātĭs,** *ye may advise*
	Mŏn-eăt, *he may advise.*			**Mŏn-eant,** *they may advise.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-ērem,** *I might advise*		P.	**Mŏn-ērēmŭs,** *We might advise*
	Mŏn-ērēs, *thou mightst advise*			**Mŏn-ērētĭs,** *ye might advise*
	Mŏn-ērĕt, *he might advise.*			**Mŏn-ērent,** *they might advise.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uĕrim,** *I may have advised*		P.	**Mŏn-uĕrimŭs,** *We may have advised*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭs, *thou mayst have advised*			**Mŏn-uĕritĭs,** *ye may have advised*
	Mŏn-uĕrĭt, *he may have advised*			**Mŏn-uĕrint,** *they may have advised*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S.	**Mŏn-uissem,** *I should have advised*		P.	**Mŏn-uissēmŭs,** *We should have advised*
	Mŏn-uissēs, *thou wouldst have advised*			**Mŏn-uissētĭs,** *ye would have advised*
	Mŏn-uissĕt, *he would have advised*			**Mŏn-uissent,** *they would have advised*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imp.	**Mŏn-ērĕ,**	*to advise.*
Perf. and Plup.	**Mŏn-uissĕ,**	*to have advised.*
Future.	**Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Mŏn-endī,**	*of advising*
Dat.	**Mŏn-endō,**	*for advising*
Acc.	**Mŏn-endum,**	*advising*
Abl.	**Mŏn-endō,**	*by advising.*

SUPINES.

Mŏn-ĭtum,	*to advise.*
Mŏn-ĭtū,	*in advising,* or *to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. **Mŏn-ens, -entis,** *advising.*

Future. **Mŏn-ĭtūrŭs,** (**ă, um**), *about to advise.*

Obs. **Mŏnĭtūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, monĭturŭs sum, *I am about to advise;* mŏnĭtūrŭs ĕram, *I was about to advise,* &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation.*

XXI.—Third or Consonant and U Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Rĕgo, rexī, rectum, rĕgĕrĕ,—*to rule.* **Stem: rĕg-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ō,**	*I rule,* or *am ruling*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭmŭs,**	*We rule,* or *are ruling*
Rĕg-ĭs,	*thou rulest,* or *art ruling*	**Rĕg-ĭtĭs,**	*ye rule,* or *are ruling*
Rĕg-ĭt,	*he rules,* or *is ruling*	**Rĕg-unt,**	*they rule,* or *are ruling*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ēbam,**	*I was ruling*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,**	*We were ruling*
Rĕg-ēbās,	*thou wast ruling*	**Rĕg-ēbātĭs,**	*ye were ruling*
Rĕg-ēbăt,	*he was ruling.*	**Rĕg-ēbant,**	*they were ruling.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Rĕg-am,**	*I shall rule*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēmŭs,**	*We shall rule*
Rĕg-ēs,	*thou wilt rule*	**Rĕg-ētĭs,**	*ye will rule*
Rĕg-ĕt,	*he will rule.*	**Rĕg-ent,**	*they will rule.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Rex-ī,**	*I have ruled,* or *I ruled*	*P.* **Rex-ĭmŭs,**	*We have ruled,* or *we ruled*
Rex-istī,	*thou hast ruled,* or *thou ruledst*	**Rex-istĭs,**	*ye have ruled,* or *ye ruled*
Rex-ĭt,	*he has ruled,* or *he ruled.*	**Rex-ērunt** or **rex-ērĕ,**	*they have ruled,* or *they ruled.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Rex-ĕram,**	*I had ruled*	*P.* **Rex-ĕrāmŭs,**	*We had ruled*
Rex-ĕrās,	*thou hadst ruled*	**Rex-ĕrātĭs,**	*ye had ruled*
Rex-ĕrăt,	*he had ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrant,**	*they had ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Rex-ĕro,**	*I shall have ruled*	*P.* **Rex-ĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have ruled*
Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have ruled*	**Rex-ĕritĭs,**	*ye will have ruled*
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he will have ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they will have ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ĕ,**	*Rule thou.*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭtĕ,**	*Rule ye.*

Future Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ĭto,**	*Thou shalt* or *must rule*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must rule*
Rĕg-ĭto,	*he shall* or *must rule.*	**Rĕg-unto,**	*they shall* or *must rule.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Rĕg-am,**	*I may rule*	*P.* **Rĕg-āmŭs,**	*We may rule*
Rĕg-ās,	*thou mayst rule*	**Rĕg-ātĭs,**	*ye may rule*
Rĕg-ăt,	*he may rule.*	**Rĕg-ant,**	*they may rule.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ĕrem,**	*I might rule*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,**	*We might rule*
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	*thou mightst rule*	**Rĕg-ĕrētĭs,**	*ye might rule*
Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	*he might rule.*	**Rĕg-ĕrent,**	*they might rule.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S. **Rex-ĕrim,**	*I may have ruled.*	*P.* **Rex-ĕrimŭs,**	*We may have ruled.*
Rex-ĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have ruled.*	**Rex-ĕritĭs,**	*ye may have ruled.*
Rex-ĕrĭt,	*he may have ruled.*	**Rex-ĕrint,**	*they may have ruled.*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Rex-issem,**	*I should have ruled.*	*P.* **Rex-issēmŭs,**	*We should have ruled.*
Rex-issēs,	*thou wouldst have ruled.*	**Rex-issētĭs,**	*ye would have ruled.*
Rex-issĕt,	*he would have ruled.*	**Rex-issent,**	*they would have ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imp.	**Rĕg-ĕrĕ,**	*to rule.*
Perf. and Plup.	**Rex-issĕ,**	*to have ruled.*
Future.	**Rec-tūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to rule.*

SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	*to rule*
Rec-tū,	*in ruling,* or *to be ruled.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Rĕg-endī,**	*of ruling*
Dat.	**Rĕg-endō,**	*for ruling*
Acc.	**Rĕg-endum,**	*ruling*
Abl.	**Rĕg-endō,**	*by ruling.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present. **Rĕg-ens, -entis,** *ruling*
Future. **Rec-tūrŭs (ă, um),** *about to rule.*

Obs. **Rectūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, rectūrŭs sum, *I am about to rule;* rectūrŭs ĕram, *I was about to rule,* &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation.*

XXII.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, audītum, audīrĕ,—*to hear.* Stem : **audi-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-io,**	*I hear*, or *am* } *hearing.*	*P.* **Aud-īmŭs,**	*We hear*, or *are* } *hearing.*
Aud-īs,	*thou hearest*, or *art*	**Aud-ītĭs,**	*ye hear*, or *are*
Aud-ĭt,	*he hears*, or *is*	**Aud-iunt,**	*they hear*, or *are*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-iēbam,**	*I was hearing*	*P.* **Aud-iēbāmŭs,**	*We were hearing*
Aud-iēbās,	*thou wast hearing*	**Aud-iēbātĭs,**	*ye were hearing*
Aud-iēbăt,	*he was hearing.*	**Aud-iēbant,**	*they were hearing.*

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. **Aud-iam,**	*I shall hear*	*P.* **Aud-iēmŭs,**	*We shall hear*
Aud-iēs,	*thou wilt hear*	**Aud-iētĭs,**	*ye will hear*
Aud-iĕt,	*he will hear.*	**Aud-ient,**	*they will hear.*

4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īvī,**	*I have heard*, or *I heard*	*P.* **Aud-īvĭmŭs,**	*We have heard*, or *we heard*
Aud-īvistī,	*thou hast heard*, or *thou heardst*	**Aud-īvistĭs,**	*ye have heard*, or *ye heard*
Aud-īvĭt,	*he has heard*, or *he heard.*	**Aud-īvērunt,** or **-īvērĕ,**	*they have heard*, or *they heard.*

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īvĕram,**	*I had heard*	*P.* **Aud-īvĕrāmŭs,**	*We had heard*
Aud-īvĕrās,	*thou hadst heard*	**Aud-īvĕrātĭs,**	*ye had heard*
Aud-īvĕrăt,	*he had heard.*	**Aud-īvĕrant,**	*they had heard.*

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-īvĕro,	*I shall* } *have heard.*	*P.* **Aud-īvĕrimŭs,**	*We shall* } *have heard.*
Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt*	**Aud-īvĕritĭs,**	*ye will*
Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he will*	**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they will*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-ī,**	*Hear thou.*	*P.* **Aud-ītĕ,**	*Hear ye.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Aud-īto,**	*Thou shalt* or *must hear*	*P.* **Aud-ītōtĕ,**	*Ye shall* or *must hear*
Aud-ītŏ,	*he shall* or *must hear.*	**Aud-iunto,**	*they shall* or *must hear.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S.	**Aud-iam,**	*I may hear*	*P.* **Aud-iāmŭs,**	*We may hear*
	Aud-iās,	*thou mayst hear*	**Aud-iātĭs,**	*ye may hear*
	Aud-iăt,	*he may hear.*	**Aud-iant,**	*they may hear.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īrem,**	*I might hear*	*P.* **Aud-īrēmŭs,**	*We might hear*
	Aud-īrēs,	*thou mightst hear*	**Aud-īrētĭs,**	*ye might hear*
	Aud-īrĕt,	*he might hear.*	**Aud-īrent,**	*they might hear.*

3. Perfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvĕrim,**	*I may have heard*	*P.* **Aud-īvĕrimus,**	*We may have heard*
	Aud-īvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have heard*	**Aud-īvĕritĭs,**	*ye may have heard*
	Aud-īvĕrĭt,	*he may have heard*	**Aud-īvĕrint,**	*they may have heard*

4. Pluperfect Tense.

S.	**Aud-īvissem,**	*I should have heard*	*P.* **Aud-īvissēmŭs,**	*We should have heard*
	Aud-īvissēs,	*thou wouldst have heard*	**Aud-īvissētĭs,**	*ye would have heard*
	Aud-īvissĕt,	*he would have heard*	**Aud-īvissent,**	*they would have heard*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. and Imp.	**Aud-īrĕ,**	*to hear.*
Perf. and Plup.	**Aud-īvissĕ,**	*to have heard.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrŭs essĕ,**	*to be about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	**Aud-iendī,**	*of hearing*
Dat.	**Aud-iendō,**	*for hearing*
Acc.	**Aud-iendum,**	*hearing*
Abl.	**Aud-iendō,**	*by hearing.*

SUPINES.

Aud-ītum,	*to hear.*
Aud-ītū,	*in hearing,* or *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	**Aud-iens, -entis,** *hearing.*
Future.	**Aud-ītūrŭs (ă, um),** *about to hear.*

Obs. **Audītūrŭs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of **sum**: as, audītūrŭs sum, *I am about to hear;* audītūrŭs ĕram, *I was about to hear,* &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation.*

Note.—In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *ii* are often contracted into *i*: as,

audīvistī	becomes	audĭistī *or* audistī
audīvistĭs	,,	audĭistĭs *or* audistĭs
audīvĭt	,,	audĭĭt
audīvērunt	,,	audĭērunt
audīvĕro	,,	audĭĕro
audīvĕram	becomes	audĭĕram
audivĕrim	,,	audĭĕrim
audīvissem	,,	audĭissem *or* audissem
audīvissĕ	,,	audĭissĕ *or* audissĕ.

First Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Exercise XXV.

The Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Tenses, Indicative.

A.—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue they-are-getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves, the enemy (*pl.*) were awake. 6. We (*nos*) build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) find-fault-with yourself (*te*), I (do) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing their arms.

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.

Rule 11.—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case: as, Rŏmŭlŭs rex, *Romulus, the king.*

B.—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnaverunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of)

Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast improved (*fut. perf.*) thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splĕndid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*), not found-fault-with you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

Imperative Mood.

NOTE.—*Not* in prohibitions is always NE.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutate, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato praeceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vituperatote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amanto Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours,* scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

* Translate *those-of-yours*, by *istos*.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, aedĭfĭco dŏmum, *I am building a house;* hăbĭtābo in ĕā, *I shall dwell in it.*

The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [aedĭfĭco dŏmum] ŭt ĭn ĕā *hăbĭtem*, [*I am building a house*], *in order that I may dwell in it.* Here there is no doubt about the act of *building;* but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain, and depends upon circumstances.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 95.

RULE 12.—The Conjunctions ŭt, *that, in-order-that*, and nē, *lest, in-order-that-not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

D.—1. Laudat puerum, ut litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, ut litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, ut filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, ut patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, ut me redames. 6. Amavi te, ut me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit ut milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat judex justus, ut in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, ut tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ne urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight *in-order-that* the enemy (*pl.*) may *not* (ne) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms *in-order-that* the soldiers might *not* enter their lands. 8. We prepare (our) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (nos). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in-order-that others might dwell in them.

RULE 13.—Quīn is used with the Subjunctive Mood after nōn dŭbĭto, *I do not doubt*, nēmo dŭbĭtăt, *no one doubts;* quĭs dŭbĭtăt? *who doubts?* nōn est dŭbĭum, *it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt;* and is translated in English by *that.*

After such expressions as these, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, nēmo dŭbĭtăt quīn *sĭt* justum, *no one doubts that it* IS *just.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.

E.—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint.* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnavissent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnavisset.

* The *Periphrastic Conjugation*, consisting of the Future Participle in *turus* with the Verb *sum*, denotes intention or futurity. See p. 39, *Obs.*

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit. 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

In the following Exercise the verbs in Italics are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that the enemy *had entered* the city. 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they *had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our men *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight (*pres. subj.*) for (prō with abl.) his native-land?

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood: as, Caesăr hostēs sŭpĕrārĕ pŏtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

Pŏtest, (*he, she, it*) *is able.* **Possunt,** (*they*) *are able.*

F.—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Caesar sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscinia cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome the enemies. 5. The general entered the city, carrying (his) sword. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu flebas. 2. Ego te monebo, tu flebis. 3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus parebant regibus. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Praeceptor gaudebat, quod vos ejus praeceptis parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!

1. *We* (nos) shall rejoice, *you* (vos) will weep. 2. The young-man obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

B.—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites! laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praebuerunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coërcueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (*praebeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens. 7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

* *Obs.* *'To set = that I may set:* ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by ut and the Subjunctive.

Third Conjugation.—Active Voice.

Exercise XXVII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (agri, *pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (my) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (my) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (it) is very beautiful (pulcher). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell * me (*dat.*), (my) son; what has hurt you?

B.—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris cinxit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte junxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (say, joined the river by a bridge). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut. perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (when) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (things) (*neut. pl.*).

* The verbs dīco, dūco, făcio, drop the final *e* in the imperative mood: hence dic, *tell thou;* duc, *lead thou;* fac, *do thou.*

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter correxerim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narrate nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*fut. part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to-be-learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

Indicative and Imperative Moods.

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudito. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunto. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obediet.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury (*fut. imper.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

B.—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicerō domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obediverant. 4. Vincīte eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram nocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audivi. 6. Servi dominum sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (validissimus) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.

C.—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (animus*). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (dolorem iramque). 10. (He) who knows not (nescio) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

* Use the Singular.

XXIII.—First or A Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Ămŏr, ămātŭs sum *or* **fuī, ămārī,**—*to be loved.* Stem: **ăma-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Ăm-ŏr,**	*I am loved*	*P.* **Ăm-āmŭr,**	*We are loved*
Ăm-ārĭs *or* **ăm-ārĕ,**	*thou art loved*	**Ăm-āmĭnī,**	*ye are loved*
Ăm-ātŭr,	*he is loved.*	**Ăm-antŭr,**	*they are loved.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-ābăr,**	*I was being loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ābāmŭr,**	*We were being loved*
Ăm-ābārĭs *or* **ăm-ābārĕ,**	*thou wast being loved*	**Ăm-ābāmĭnī,**	*ye were being loved*
Ăm-ābātŭr,	*he was being loved.*	**Ăm-ābantŭr,**	*they were being loved.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Ăm-ābŏr,**	*I shall be loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ābĭmŭr,**	*We shall be loved*
Ăm-ābĕrĭs *or* **ăm-ābĕrĕ,**	*thou wilt be loved*	**Ăm-ābĭmĭnī,**	*ye will be loved*
Ăm-ābĭtŭr,	*he will be loved.*	**Ăm-ābuntŭr,**	*they will be loved.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-ātŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been loved,* or *was loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ātī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been loved,* or *were loved*
Ăm-ātŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been loved,* or *wast loved*	**Ăm-ātī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*ye have been loved,* or *were loved*
Ăm-ātŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been loved,* or *was loved.*	**Ăm-ātī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been loved,* or *were loved.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-ātŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ātī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been loved*	**Ăm-ātī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been loved.*	**Ăm-ātī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been loved.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Ăm-ātŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ātī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been loved*	**Ăm-ātī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been loved.*	**Ăm-ātī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been loved.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ārĕ,**	*Be thou loved.*	*P.* **Am-āmĭnī,**	*Be ye loved.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ātŏr,**	*Thou must be loved*	*P.* **Ăm-antŏr,**	*They must be loved.*
Ăm-ātŏr,	*he must be loved.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ĕr,**	*I may be loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ēmŭr,**	*We may be loved*
Ăm-ērĭs *or* **ăm-ērĕ,**	*thou mayst be loved*	**Ăm-ēmĭnī,**	*ye may be loved*
Ăm-ētŭr,	*he may be loved.*	**Ăm-entŭr,**	*they may be loved.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ārĕr,**	*I might be loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ārēmŭr,**	*We might be loved*
Ăm-ārērĭs *or* **ăm-ārērĕ,**	*thou mightst be loved*	**Ăm-ārēmĭnī,**	*ye might be loved*
Ăm-ārētŭr,	*he might be loved.*	**Ăm-ārentŭr,**	*they might be loved.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ātŭs sim** *or* **fuĕrim,**	*I may have been loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ātī sīmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs sīs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou mayst have been loved*	**Ăm-ātī sītĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs sĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he may have been loved.*	**Ăm-ātī sint** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they may have been loved.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ăm-ātŭs essem** *or* **fuissem,**	*I should have been loved*	*P.* **Ăm-ātī essēmŭs** *or* **fuissēmŭs,**	*We should have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs essēs *or* **fuissēs,**	*thou wouldst have been loved*	**Ăm-ātī essētĭs** *or* **fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been loved*
Ăm-ātŭs essĕt *or* **fuissĕt,**	*he would have been loved.*	**Ăm-ātī essent** *or* **fuissent,**	*they would have been loved.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	**Ăm-ārī,**	*to be loved.*
PERF. and PLUP.	**Ăm-ātŭs (a, um) essĕ** *or* **fuissĕ,**	*to have been loved.*
FUTURE.	**Ăm-ātum īrī** (not declined),	*to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Ăm-ātŭs (a, um),**	*loved* or *having been loved.*
GERUNDIVE.	**Ăm-andŭs (a, um),**	*meet to be loved.*

XXIV.—Second or E Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Mŏneŏr, mŏnĭtŭs sum *or* **fuī, mŏnērī,**—*to be advised.* Stem: **mŏne-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Mŏn-eŏr,**	*I am advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēmŭr,**	*We are advised*
Mŏn-ērĭs *or* **mŏn-ērĕ,**	*thou art advised*	**Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**	*ye are advised*
Mŏn-ētŭr,	*he is advised.*	**Mŏn-entŭr,**	*they are advised.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbăr,**	*I was being advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbārĭs *or* **mŏn-ēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being advised*	**Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being advised*
Mŏn-ēbātŭr,	*he was being advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being advised.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ēbŏr,**	*I shall be advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,**	*We shall be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs *or* **mŏn-ēbĕrĕ,**	*thou wilt be advised*	**Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,**	*ye will be advised*
Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr,	*he will be advised.*	**Mŏn-ēbuntŭr,**	*they will be advised.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been advised,* or *was advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been advised,* or *were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been advised,* or *wast advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*ye have been advised,* or *were advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been advised,* or *was advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been advised,* or *were advised.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been advised.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye will have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been advised.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ērĕ,**	*Be thou advised.*	*P.* **Mŏn-ēmĭnī,**	*Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ētŏr,** *Thou must be advised* **Mŏn-ētŏr,** *he must be advised.*		*P.* **Mŏn-entŏr,**	*They must be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-eăr,**	*I may be advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-eāmŭr,**	*We may be advised*
Mŏn-eārĭs *or* **mŏn-eārĕ,**	*thou mayst be advised*	**Mŏn-eāmĭnī,**	*ye may be advised*
Mŏn-eātŭr,	*he may be advised.*	**Mŏn-eantŭr,**	*they may be advised.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ērĕr,**	*I might be advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ērēmŭr,**	*We might be advised*
Mŏn-ērērĭs *or* **mŏn-ērērĕ,**	*thou mightst be advised*	**Mŏn-ērēmĭnī,**	*ye might be advised*
Mŏn-ērētŭr,	*he might be advised.*	**Mŏn-ērentŭr,**	*they might be advised.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs sim** *or* **fuĕrim,**	*I may have been advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī sīmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sīs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou mayst have been advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sītĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs sĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he may have been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī sint** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they may have been advised.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Mŏn-ĭtŭs essem** *or* **fuissem,**	*I should have been advised*	*P.* **Mŏn-ĭtī essēmŭs** *or* **fuissēmŭs,**	*We should have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essēs *or* **fuissēs,**	*thou wouldst have been advised*	**Mŏn-ĭtī essētĭs** *or* **fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been advised*
Mŏn-ĭtŭs essĕt *or* **fuissĕt,**	*he would have been advised.*	**Mŏn-ĭtī essent** *or* **fuissent,**	*they would have been advised.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	**Mŏn-ērī,**	*to be advised.*
PERF. and PLUP.	**Mŏn-ĭtŭs (a, um) essĕ** *or* **fuissĕ,**	*to have been advised.*
FUTURE.	**Mŏn-ĭtum īrī** (not declined),	*to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Mŏn-ĭtŭs (a, um),**	*advised,* or *having been advised.*
GERUNDIVE.	**Mŏn-endŭs (a, um),**	*meet to be advised.*

XXV.—Third or Consonant and U Conjugation. Passive Voice.

Rĕgŏr, rectŭs sum *or* **fuī, rĕgī,**—*to be ruled.* Stem: **rĕg-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ŏr,**	*I am ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭmŭr,**	*We are ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrĭs *or* **rĕg-ĕrĕ,**	*thou art ruled*	**Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,**	*ye are ruled*
Rĕg-ĭtŭr,	*he is ruled.*	**Rĕg-untŭr,**	*they are ruled.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ēbăr,**	*I was being ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,**	*We were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbārĭs *or* **rĕg-ēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being ruled*	**Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being ruled*
Rĕg-ēbātŭr,	*he was being ruled.*	**Rĕg-ēbantŭr,**	*they were being ruled.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Rĕg-ăr,**	*I shall be ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-ēmŭr,**	*We shall be ruled*
Rĕg-ērĭs *or* **rĕg-ērĕ,**	*thou wilt be ruled*	**Rĕg-ēmĭnī,**	*ye will be ruled*
Rĕg-ētŭr,	*he will be ruled.*	**Rĕg-entŭr,**	*they will be ruled.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been ruled,* or *was ruled*	*P.* **Rec-tī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been ruled,* or *were ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been ruled,* or *wast ruled*	**Rec-tī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*ye have been ruled,* or *were ruled*
Rec-tŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been ruled* or *was ruled.*	**Rec-tī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been ruled,* or *were ruled.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been ruled*	*P.* **Rec-tī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been ruled*	**Rec-tī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been ruled.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Rec-tŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been ruled*	*P.* **Rec-tī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We shall have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been ruled*	**Rec-tī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye will have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been ruled.*	**Rec-tī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been ruled.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĕrĕ,**	*Be thou ruled.*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,**	*Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĭtŏr,**	*Thou must be ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-untŏr,**	*They must be ruled.*
Rĕg-ĭtŏr,	*he must be ruled.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ăr,**	*I may be ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-āmŭr,**	*We may be ruled*
Rĕg-āris *or* **rĕg-ārĕ,**	*thou mayst be ruled*	**Rĕg-āmĭnī,**	*ye may be ruled*
Rĕg-ātŭr,	*he may be ruled.*	**Rĕg-antŭr,**	*they may be ruled.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rĕg-ĕrĕr,**	*I might be ruled*	*P.* **Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,**	*We might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrēris *or* **rĕg-ĕrērĕ,**	*thou mightst be ruled*	**Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī,**	*ye might be ruled*
Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	*he might be ruled.*	**Rĕg-ĕrentŭr,**	*they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rec-tŭs sim** *or* **fuĕrim,**	*I may have been ruled*	*P.* **Rec-tī sīmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs sīs *or* **fuĕrīs,**	*thou mayst have been ruled*	**Rec-tī sītis** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs sĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he may have been ruled.*	**Rec-tī sint** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they may have been ruled.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Rec-tŭs essem** *or* **fuissem,**	*I should have been ruled*	*P.* **Rec-tī essēmŭs** *or* **fuissēmŭs,**	*We should have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs essēs *or* **fuissēs,**	*thou wouldst have been ruled*	**Rec-tī essētĭs** *or* **fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been ruled*
Rec-tŭs essĕt *or* **fuissĕt,**	*he would have been ruled.*	**Rec-tī essent** *or* **fuissent,**	*they would have been ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	**Rĕg-ī,**	*to be ruled.*
PERF. and PLUP.	**Rec-tŭs** (**a, um**) **essĕ** *or* **fuissĕ,**	*to have been ruled.*
FUTURE.	**Rec-tum īrī** (not declined),	*to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Rec-tŭs (a, um),**	*ruled* or *having been ruled.*
GERUNDIVE.	**Rĕg-endŭs (a, um),**	*meet to be ruled.*

XXVI.—Fourth or I Conjugation.—Passive Voice.

Audiŏr, audītŭs sum *or* **fuī, audīrī,**—*to be heard.* Stem: **audi-.**

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.

S. **Aud-iŏr,**	*I am heard*	*P.* **Aud-īmŭr,**	*We are heard*
Aud-īrĭs *or* **aud-īrĕ,**	*thou art heard*	**Aud-īmĭnī,**	*ye are heard*
Aud-ītŭr,	*he is heard.*	**Aud-iuntŭr,**	*they are heard.*

2. Imperfect Tense.

S. **Aud-iēbăr,**	*I was being heard*	*P.* **Aud-iēbāmŭr,**	*We were being heard*
Aud-iēbārĭs *or* **aud-iēbārĕ,**	*thou wast being heard*	**Aud-iēbāmĭnī,**	*ye were being heard*
Aud-iēbātŭr,	*he was being heard.*	**Aud-iēbantŭr,**	*they were being heard.*

3. Future-Simple Tense.

S. **Aud-iăr,**	*I shall be heard*	*P.* **Aud-iēmŭr,**	*We shall be heard*
Aud-iērĭs *or* **aud-iērĕ,**	*thou wilt be heard*	**Aud-iēmĭnī,**	*ye will be heard*
Aud-iētŭr,	*he will be heard.*	**Aud-ientŭr,**	*they will be heard.*

4. Perfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs sum** *or* **fuī,**	*I have been heard,* or *was heard*	*P.* **Aud-ītī sŭmŭs** *or* **fuĭmŭs,**	*We have been heard,* or *were heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕs *or* **fuistī,**	*thou hast been heard,* or *wast heard*	**Aud-ītī estĭs** *or* **fuistĭs,**	*ye have been heard,* or *were heard*
Aud-ītŭs est *or* **fuĭt,**	*he has been heard,* or *was heard.*	**Aud-ītī sunt, fuērunt,** *or* **fuērĕ,**	*they have been heard,* or *were heard.*

5. Pluperfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs ĕram** *or* **fuĕram,**	*I had been heard*	*P.* **Aud-ītī ĕrāmŭs** *or* **fuĕrāmŭs,**	*We had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrās *or* **fuĕrās,**	*thou hadst been heard*	**Aud-ītī ĕrātĭs** *or* **fuĕrātĭs,**	*ye had been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrăt *or* **fuĕrăt,**	*he had been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrant** *or* **fuĕrant,**	*they had been heard.*

6. Future-Perfect Tense.

S. **Aud-ītŭs ĕro** *or* **fuĕro,**	*I shall have been heard*	*P.* **Aud-ītī ĕrĭmŭs** *or* **fuĕrĭmŭs,**	*We shall have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou wilt have been heard*	**Aud-ītī ĕrĭtĭs** *or* **fuĕrĭtĭs,**	*ye will have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs ĕrĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he will have been heard.*	**Aud-ītī ĕrunt** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they will have been heard.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īrĕ,**	*Be thou heard.*	*P.* **Aud-īmĭnī,**	*Be ye heard.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŏr,**	*Thou must be heard*	*P.* **Aud-iuntŏr,**	*They must be heard.*
Aud-ītŏr,	*he must be heard.*		

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Aud-iăr,**	*I may be heard*	*P.* **Aud-iāmŭr,**	*We may be heard*
Aud-iārĭs *or* **aud-iārĕ,**	*thou mayst be heard*	**Aud-iāmĭnī,**	*ye may be heard*
Aud-iātŭr,	*he may be heard.*	**Aud-iantŭr,**	*they may be heard.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-īrĕr,**	*I might be heard*	*P.* **Aud-īrēmŭr,**	*We might be heard*
Aud-īrērĭs *or* **aud-īrērĕ,**	*thou mightst be heard*	**Aud-īrēmĭnī,**	*ye might be heard*
Aud-īrētŭr,	*he might be heard.*	**Aud-īrentŭr,**	*they might be heard.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŭs sim** *or* **fuĕrim,**	*I may have been heard*	*P.* **Aud-ītī sīmŭs** *or* **fuĕrimŭs,**	*We may have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs sīs *or* **fuĕrĭs,**	*thou mayst have been heard*	**Aud-ītī sītĭs** *or* **fuĕritĭs,**	*ye may have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs sĭt *or* **fuĕrĭt,**	*he may have been heard.*	**Aud-ītī sint** *or* **fuĕrint,**	*they may have been heard.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Aud-ītŭs essem** *or* **fuissem,**	*I should have been heard*	*P.* **Aud-ītī essēmŭs** *or* **fuissēmŭs,**	*We should have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essēs *or* **fuissēs,**	*thou wouldst have been heard*	**Aud-ītī essētĭs** *or* **fuissētĭs,**	*ye would have been heard*
Aud-ītŭs essĕt *or* **fuissĕt,**	*he would have been heard.*	**Aud-ītī essent** *or* **fuissent,**	*they would have been heard.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	**Aud-īrī,**	*to be heard.*
PERF. and PLUP.	**Aud-ītŭs (a, um) essĕ** *or* **fuissĕ,**	*to have been heard.*
FUTURE.	**Aud-ītum īrī** (not declined),	*to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	**Aud-ītŭs (a, um),**	*heard* or *having been heard.*
GERUNDIVE.	**Aud-iendŭs (a, um),**	*meet to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

RULE 15.—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative. If the ablative denotes a living being, the preposition ā or ăb is prefixed. Thus măgistĕr puĕrum laudăt, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, puĕr ā măgistrō laudātŭr, *the boy is praised by the master.*

EXERCISE XXIX.

A.—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attenti a magistris laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri, in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulce non est. 8. Puer bene educator. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quum rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (paro) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

B.—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edŭcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnat, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be prepared (*Imper.*); the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*). 7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8. The good must not be blamed (*Imper.*); the bad must not be praised (*Imper.*)! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXX.

A.—1. Discipuli a magistro docentur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised (*Imper.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego strenue exercerer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exercearo. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He was taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be carefully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*) be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things; take-care that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

NOTE.—In all Tenses compounded of the Perfect Participle and the verb sum, the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with the subject of the verb: as,

Puĕr ămātŭs est,	*the boy was loved.*
Puellă ămātă est,	*the girl was loved.*
Bellum ămātum est,	*war was loved.*
Puĕrī ămātī sunt,	*the boys were loved.*
Puellae ămātae sunt,	*the girls were loved.*
Bellă ămātă sunt,	*wars were loved.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

A.—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consulibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligēre. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjuratio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vehatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru veheretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione rēgi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (quae, *neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (quae) had been written (*pluperf. subj.**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 95. The Indicative must be used in translating into English.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXII.

A.—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo punientur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finientur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntor. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiemus, quam negotia vestra finita erunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (nostra) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut. perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and strengthened with guards.

B.—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirere. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceretur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnaviter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me gnaviter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imper.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*pres. subj.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well trained boys love their master.

XXVII.—Third Conjugation (with I in certain Tenses).

Căpio, cēpī, captum, căpĕrĕ,—*to take.* Stem: **căp-** or **căpi-**.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	**Căp-io,** *I take*	**Căp-ĭmŭs,** *We take*
	Căp-ĭs, *thou takest*	**Căp-ĭtĭs,** *ye take*
	Căp-ĭt, *he takes.*	**Căp-iunt,** *they take.*

Imperfect.	**Căp-iēbam,**	*I was taking.*
Future.	**Căp-iam,**	*I shall take.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	**Căp-iam,**	*I may take.*
Imperfect.	**Căp-ĕrem;**	*I might take.*

Imperative Mood.

Present.	**Căp-ĕ,**	*take thou.*
Future.	**Căp-ĭto,**	*thou shalt* or *must take.*

Infinitive.

Present.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*to take.*

Participle.

Present.	**Căp-iens,**	*taking.*

Gerund.

Gen.	**Căp-iendi,**	*of taking.*

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	**Căp-ĭŏr,** *I am taken*	**Căp-ĭmŭr,** *We are taken*
	Căp-ĕrĭs or **-ĕrĕ,** *thou art taken*	**Căp-ĭmĭnī,** *ye are taken*
	Căp-ĭtŭr, *he is taken.*	**Căp-iuntŭr,** *they are taken.*

Future.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I shall be taken.*
Imperfect.	**Căp-iēbar,**	*I was being taken.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-iăr,**	*I may be taken.*
Imperfect.	**Căp-ĕrĕr,**	*I might be taken.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	**Căp-ĕrĕ,**	*be thou taken.*
Future.	**Căp-ĭtŏr,**	*thou must be taken.*

INFINITIVE.

Present.	**Căp-ī,**	*to be taken.*

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their con jugation is quite regular: cēp-ī, cēp-ĕram, cēp-ĕro, etc.

The Verbs conjugated like căpio are:

făcio,	fēcī,	factum,	făcĕrĕ,	*to make.*
jăcio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jăcĕrĕ,	*to throw.*
fŭgio,	fūgī,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕrĕ,	*to flee.*
fŏdio,	fōdī,	fossum,	fŏdĕrĕ,	*to dig.*
răpio,	răpuī,	raptum,	răpĕrĕ,	*to seize.*
părio,	pĕpĕrī,	partum,	părĕrĕ,	*to bring forth.*
quătio,	(no perfect,)	quassum,	quătĕrĕ,	*to shake.*
cŭpio,	cŭpīvī,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕrĕ,	*to desire.*
săpio,	săpīvī,	—	săpĕrĕ,	*to savour of, be wise.*
lăcio,	—	—	lăcĕrĕ,	*to draw* } only in com-
spĕcio,	—	—	spĕcĕrĕ,	*to look* } pounds.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (*subj.*) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours-of the poets (*acc.*).

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,

I. Hortŏr, hortātŭs sum, hortārī, *to exhort,* like **ămŏr.**
II. Vĕreŏr, vĕrĭtŭs sum, vĕrērī, *to fear,* „ **mŏneŏr.**

		I.		II.	
Indicative Mood.	*Present.*	Hort-ŏr,	*I exhort,* or *am exhorting.*	Vĕr-eŏr,	*I fear,* or *am fearing.*
		Hort-ārĭs (ārĕ), &c.	*thou exhortest.* *&c.*	Vĕr-ērĭs (ērĕ), &c.	*thou fearest.* *&c.*
	Imperfect.	Hort-ābăr,	*I was exhorting.*	Vĕr-ēbăr,	*I was fearing.*
	Future-Simple.	Hort-ābŏr,	*I shall exhort.*	Vĕr-ēbŏr,	*I shall fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sum,	*I have exhorted,* or *I exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sum,	*I have feared,* or *I feared.*
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātŭs ĕram,	*I had exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕram,	*I had feared.*
	Fut. Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs ĕro,	*I shall have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs ĕro,	*I shall have feared.*
Subjunctive Mood.	*Present.*	Hort-ĕr,	*I may exhort.*	Vĕr-eăr,	*I may fear.*
	Imperfect.	Hort-ārĕr,	*I might exhort.*	Vĕr-ērĕr,	*I might fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs sim,	*I may have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs sim,	*I may have feared.*
	Pluperfect.	Hort-ātŭs essem,	*I should have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs essem,	*I should have feared.*
Imperative.	*Present.*	Hort-ārĕ,	*exhort thou.*	Vĕr-ērĕ,	*fear thou.*
	Future.	Hort-ātŏr,	*thou shalt* or *must exhort.*	Vĕr-ētŏr,	*thou shalt* or *must fear.*
Infinitive.	*Pres. & Imperf.*	Hort-ārī,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ērī,	*to fear.*
	Perf. & Plup.	Hort-ātŭs essĕ,	*to have exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs essĕ,	*to have feared.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to fear.*
Participles.	*Present.*	Hort-ans,	*exhorting.*	Vĕr-ens,	*fearing.*
	Future.	Hort-ātūrŭs,	*about to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtūrŭs,	*about to fear.*
	Perfect.	Hort-ātŭs,	*having exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtŭs,	*having feared.*
	Gerundive.	Hort-andŭs,	*meet to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-endŭs,	*meet to be feared.*
Supines.		Hort-ātum,	*to exhort.*	Vĕr-ĭtum,	*to fear.*
		Hort-ātū,	*to be exhorted.*	Vĕr-ĭtū,	*to be feared.*
Gerund.		Hort-andi, &c.	*of exhorting.* *&c.*	Vĕr-endi, &c.	*of fearing.* *&c.*

Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active: as, hortātŭs, *having exhorted.*

but an Active meaning.

III. **Lŏquŏr, lŏcūtŭs sum, lŏquī,** *to speak*, like **rĕgŏr.**
IV. **Partiŏr, partītŭs sum, partīrī,** *to divide*, „ **audiŏr.**

	III.		IV.		
Present.	Lŏqu-ŏr,	*I speak*, or *am speaking.*	Part-iŏr,	*I divide*, or *am dividing.*	INDICATIVE MOOD.
	Lŏqu-ĕrĭs (ĕrĕ),	*thou speakest.*	Part-īrĭs (īrĕ),	*thou dividest.*	
	&c.	*&c.*	&c.	*&c.*	
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ēbăr,	*I was speaking.*	Part-iēbăr,	*I was dividing.*	
Fut.-Simple.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I shall speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I shall divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sum,	*I have spoken*, or *I spoke.*	Part-ītŭs sum,	*I have divided*, or *I divided.*	
Pluperfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕram,	*I had spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕram,	*I had divided.*	
Fut. Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs ĕro,	*I shall have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs ĕro,	*I shall have divided.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ăr,	*I may speak.*	Part-iăr,	*I may divide.*	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.
Imperfect.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕr,	*I might speak.*	Part-īrĕr,	*I might divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs sim,	*I may have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs sim,	*I may have divided.*	
Pluperfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs essem,	*I should have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs essem,	*I should have divided.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ĕrĕ,	*speak thou.*	Part-īrĕ,	*divide thou.*	IMPERATIVE.
Future.	Lŏqu-ĭtŏr,	*thou shalt* or *must speak.*	Part-ītŏr,	*thou shalt* or *must divide.*	
Pres. & Imp.	Lŏqu-ī,	*to speak.*	Part-īrī,	*to divide.*	INFINITIVE.
Perf. & Plup.	Lŏcū-tŭs essĕ,	*to have spoken.*	Part-ītŭs essĕ,	*to have divided.*	
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs essĕ,	*to be about to divide.*	
Present.	Lŏqu-ens,	*speaking.*	Part-iens,	*dividing.*	PARTICIPLES.
Future.	Lŏcū-tūrŭs,	*about to speak.*	Part-ītūrŭs,	*about to divide.*	
Perfect.	Lŏcū-tŭs,	*having spoken.*	Part-ītŭs,	*having divided.*	
Gerundive.	Lŏqu-endŭs,	*meet to be spoken.*	Part-iendŭs,	*meet to be divided.*	
SUPINES.	Lŏcū-tum,	*to speak.*	Part-ītum,	*to divide.*	
	Lŏcū-tū,	*to be spoken.*	Part-ītū,	*to be divided.*	
GERUND.	Lŏqu-endi,	*of speaking.*	Part-iendi,	*of dividing.*	
	&c.	*&c.*	&c.	*&c.*	

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.
Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

Exercise XXXIV.

Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does-good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at length will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut. perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (ea, *n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

Exercise XXXV.

Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Rule 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember*, *to forget*, *to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit: nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things, citizens, when I am cast forth (*fut. perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 10. He reverences the gods.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

RULE 17.—Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor, govern the Ablative Case. To these add pŏtior, *I obtain-possession-of* (4 Conj.).

A.—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruentur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungĕre! 10. Aliquando ŏculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing to enjoy life; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take-care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has died (*fut. perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse (them). 10. Follow us; *we* will protect you.

B.—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci jubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve (*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to speak kindly (benigne) to (one's) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Tarquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (*pl.*) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us try our valour; let us obtain-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

XXIX.—Prepositions.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

I. *With the Accusative alone.*

Ăd,	*to.*	**Ŏb,**	*on account of.*
Adversŭs, Adversum,	*towards, against.*	**Pĕnĕs,**	*in the power of.*
		Pĕr,	*through.*
Antĕ,	*before.*	**Pōnĕ,**	*behind.*
Ăpŭd,	*at, near.*	**Post,**	*after.*
Circā, circum,	*around.*	**Praetĕr,**	*beside.*
Circĭtĕr,	*about.*	**Prŏpĕ,**	*near.*
Cis & citrā,	*on this side of.*	**Proptĕr,**	*on account of.*
Contrā,	*against, contrary to.*	**Sĕcundum,**	*following, in accordance with.*
Ergā,	*towards (only of the feelings).*		
Extrā,	*outside of.*	**Suprā,**	*above.*
Infrā,	*below.*	**Trans,**	*across.*
Intĕr,	*between, among.*	**Ultrā,**	*on the farther side of.*
Intrā,	*inside of, within.*	**Versŭs,**	*towards (only of place or direction).*
Juxtā,	*near, hard by, next to.*		

Versŭs is put after the word it governs.

Exercise XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Judices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fluit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge in-accordance-with the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

II. *With the Ablative alone.*

Ā, ăb, *or* **abs,**	*by* or *from.*	**Ex** *or* **ē,**	*out of.*
Absquĕ (rare),	*without.*	**Prae,**	*before, in comparison with.*
Cōram,	*in the presence of.*	**Prō,**	*before, for, on behalf of.*
Cum,	*with.*	**Sĭnĕ,**	*without.*
Dē,	*down from, from, concerning.*	**Tĕnŭs,**	*reaching to, as far as.*

Tĕnŭs is put after the word it governs.

Exercise XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate avium cantum audivimus. 2. A Cicerone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

III. *With the Accusative or Ablative.*

Ĭn, *in, into.*
Sŭb, *up to, under, beneath;* of time, *about.*
Sŭper, *over.*
Subter, *under, beneath.*
Clăm, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

In and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum,* are used instead of *cum me, cum te,* etc.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utilium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful things. 10. Towards (versus) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

XXX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles, by means of the terminations **-ē** and **-tĕr.** Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declensions end in -ē, as **doctē**, *learnedly*, from **doctus.** Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in -tĕr, as **fortĭtĕr**, *bravely*, from **fortis.**

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in **ius.**

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into **ē.**

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
doctus,	*learned.*	**doctē,**	*learnedly,*	**doctius**	**doctissĭmē**
lībĕr,	*free.*	**lībĕrē,**	*freely.*	**lībĕrius**	**lībĕrrĭmē**
pulchĕr,	*beautiful.*	**pulchrē,**	*beautifully.*	**pulchrius**	**pulcherrĭmē**
fortis,	*brave.*	**fortĭtĕr,**	*bravely.*	**fortius**	**fortissĭmē**
sĭmĭlis,	*like.*	**sĭmĭlĭtĕr,**	*alike.*	**sĭmĭlius**	**sĭmillĭmē**
ācĕr,	*keen.*	**ācrĭtĕr,**	*keenly.*	**ācrius**	**ācerrĭmē**
fēlix,	*lucky.*	**fēlĭcĭtĕr,**	*luckily.*	**fēlīcius**	**fēlīcissĭmē**
prūdens,	*prudent.*	**prūdentĕr,**	*prudently.*	**prūdentius**	**prūdentissĭmē**

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

Adjectives.		Adverbs. Positive.		Comp.	Sup.
bŏnus,	*good.*	**bĕnĕ,**	*well.*	**mĕlius**	**optĭmē**
mălus,	*bad.*	**mălĕ,**	*badly, ill.*	**pējus**	**pessĭmē**
multus,	*much, many.*	**multum,**	*much.*	**plūs**	**plūrĭmum**
magnus,	*great.*	**magnŏpĕrĕ,**	*greatly.*	**măgis**	**maxĭmē**
prŏpinquus,	*near.*	**prŏpĕ,**	*near, nearly.*	**prŏpius**	**proxĭmē**
(**prō**)	*before.*	——		**prius**	**prīmum & [prīmō**

EXERCISE XLI.

A.—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cicero Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10. Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

B.—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (*he is*) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to (ad) the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse (pejus) than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much, it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

XXXI.—Irregular Verbs.

1. Possum, pŏtuī, possĕ,—*to be able; can.*

[**Possum** is compounded of **pot** (pŏtis, *able*) and **sum**, *I am*, the *t* in *pot* being changed into *s* before another *s*.]

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present.*		4. *Perfect.*	
S. **Pos-sum**	**Pos-sim**	*S.* **Pŏt-uī**	**Pŏt-uĕrim**
Pŏt-ĕs	**Pos-sīs**	**Pŏt-uistī**	**Pŏt-uĕrĭs**
Pŏt-est	**Pos-sĭt**	**Pŏt-uĭt**	**Pŏt-uĕrĭt**
P. **Pos-sŭmŭs**	**Pos-sīmŭs**	*P.* **Pŏt-uĭmŭs**	**Pŏt-uĕrimŭs**
Pŏt-estĭs	**Pos-sītĭs**	**Pŏt-uistĭs**	**Pŏt-uĕritĭs**
Pos-sunt	**Pos-sint**	**Pŏt-uērunt (ērĕ)**	**Pŏt-uĕrint**
2. *Imperfect.*		5. *Pluperfect.*	
S. **Pŏt-ĕram**	**Pos-sem**	*S.* **Pŏt-uĕram**	**Pŏt-uissem**
Pŏt-ĕrās	**Pos-sēs**	**Pŏt-uĕrās**	**Pŏt-uissēs**
Pŏt-ĕrăt	**Pos-sĕt**	**Pŏt-uĕrăt**	**Pŏt-uissĕt**
P. **Pŏt-ĕrāmŭs**	**Pos-sēmŭs**	*P.* **Pŏt-uĕrāmŭs**	**Pŏt-uissēmŭs**
Pŏt-ĕrātĭs	**Pos-sētĭs**	**Pŏt-uĕrātĭs**	**Pŏt-uissētĭs**
Pŏt-ĕrant	**Pos-sent**	**Pŏt-uĕrant**	**Pŏt-uissent**
3. *Future-Simple.*		6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. **Pŏt-ĕro**	(wanting.)	*S.* **Pŏt-uĕro**	(wanting.)
Pŏt-ĕrĭs		**Pŏt-uĕrĭs**	
Pŏt-ĕrĭt		**Pŏt-uĕrĭt**	
P. **Pŏt-ĕrĭmŭs**		*P.* **Pŏt-uĕrimŭs**	
Pŏt-ĕrĭtĭs		**Pŏt-uĕritĭs**	
Pŏt-ĕrunt		**Pŏt-uĕrint**	

Infinitive.

Pres. and Imp.—**Possĕ.** *Perf. and Plup.*—**Pŏtuissĕ.** *Future*—wanting.
(Participle **pŏtens**, used only as Adjective, *powerful.*)

Exercise XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere. 2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to

obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to defend the city. 6. We cannot all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to leave life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. Vŏlo, vŏluī, vellĕ,—*to be willing, to wish.*

3. Nōlo, nōluī, nollĕ,—*to be unwilling, not to wish* [**non vŏlo**].

4. Mālo, māluī, mallĕ,—*to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather* [**măgis vŏlo**].

INDICATIVE.

1. *Present.*

Sing.	**Vŏlo**	**Nōlo**	**Mālo**
	Vīs	**Nōn vīs**	**Māvīs**
	Vult	**Nōn vult**	**Māvult**
Plur.	**Vŏlŭmŭs**	**Nōlŭmŭs**	**Mālŭmŭs**
	Vultĭs	**Nōn vultĭs**	**Māvultĭs**
	Vŏlunt	**Nōlunt**	**Mālunt**

2. *Imperfect.*

Sing.	**Vŏl-ēbam**	**Nōl-ēbam**	**Māl-ēbam**
	Vŏl-ēbās	**Nōl-ēbās**	**Māl-ēbās**
	Vŏl-ēbăt	**Nōl-ēbăt**	**Māl-ēbăt**
Plur.	**Vŏl-ēbāmŭs**	**Nōl-ēbāmŭs**	**Māl-ēbāmŭs**
	Vŏl-ēbātĭs	**Nōl-ēbātĭs**	**Māl-ēbātĭs**
	Vŏl-ēbant	**Nōl-ēbant**	**Māl-ēbant**

3. *Future-Simple.*

Sing.	**Vŏl-am**	**Nōl-am**	**Māl-am**
	Vŏl-ēs	**Nōl-ēs**	**Māl-ēs**
	Vŏl-ĕt	**Nōl-ĕt**	**Māl-ĕt**
Plur.	**Vŏl-ēmŭs**	**Nōl-ēmŭs**	**Māl-ēmŭs**
	Vŏl-ētĭs	**Nōl-ētĭs**	**Māl-ētĭs**
	Vŏl-ent	**Nōl-ent**	**Māl-ent**

4. *Perfect.*

Sing.	**Vŏl-uī**	**Nōl-uī**	**Māl-uī**
	Vŏl-uistī	**Nōl-uistī**	**Māl-uistī**
	Vŏl-uĭt	**Nōl-uĭt**	**Māl-uĭt**
Plur.	**Vŏl-uĭmŭs**	**Nōl-uĭmŭs**	**Māl-uĭmŭs**
	Vŏl-uistĭs	**Nōl-uistĭs**	**Māl-uistĭs**
	Vŏl-uērunt *or* **-uērĕ**	**Nōl-uērunt** *or* **-uērĕ**	**Māl-uērunt** *or* **-uērĕ**

5. *Pluperfect.*

Sing.	Vŏl-uĕram	Nōl-uĕram	Māl-uĕram
	Vŏl-uĕrās	Nōl-uĕrās	Māl-uĕrās
	Vŏl-uĕrăt	Nōl-uĕrăt	Māl-uĕrăt
Plur.	Vŏl-uĕrāmŭs	Nōl-uĕrāmŭs	Māl-uĕrāmŭs
	Vŏl-uĕrātĭs	Nōl-uĕrātĭs	Māl-uĕrātĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrant	Nōl-uĕrant	Māl-uĕrant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

Sing.	Vŏl-uĕro	Nōl-uĕro	Māl-uĕro
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭs	Māl-uĕrĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nōl-uĕrĭt	Māl-uĕrĭt
Plur.	Vŏl-uĕrimŭs	Nōl-uĕrimŭs	Māl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	Nōl-uĕritĭs	Māl-uĕritĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nōl-uĕrint	Māl-uĕrint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

Sing.	Vĕl-im	Nōl-im	Māl-im
	Vĕl-īs	Nōl-īs	Māl-īs
	Vĕl-ĭt	Nōl-ĭt	Māl-ĭt
Plur.	Vĕl-īmŭs	Nōl-īmŭs	Māl-īmŭs
	Vĕl-ītĭs	Nōl-ītĭs	Māl-ītĭs
	Vĕl-int	Nōl-int	Māl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

Sing.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vel-lĕt	Nol-lĕt	Mal-lĕt
Plur.	Vel-lēmŭs	Nol-lēmŭs	Mal-lēmŭs
	Vel-lētĭs	Nol-lētĭs	Mal-lētĭs
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

Sing.	Vŏl-uĕrim	Nōl-uĕrim	Māl-uĕrim
	Vŏl-uĕrĭs	Nōl-uĕrĭs	Māl-uĕrĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrĭt	Nōl-uĕrĭt	Māl-uĕrĭt
Plur.	Vŏl-uĕrimŭs	Nōl-uĕrimŭs	Māl-uĕrimŭs
	Vŏl-uĕritĭs	Nōl-uĕritĭs	Māl-uĕritĭs
	Vŏl-uĕrint	Nōl-uĕrint	Māl-uĕrint

4. *Pluperfect.*

Sing.	Vŏl-uissem	Nōl-uissem	Māl-uissem
	Vŏl-uissēs	Nōl-uissēs	Māl-uissēs
	Vŏl-uissĕt	Nōl-uissĕt	Māl-uissĕt
Plur.	Vŏl-uissēmŭs	Nōl-uissēmŭs	Māl-uissēmŭs
	Vŏl-uissētĭs	Nōl-uissētĭs	Māl-uissētĭs
	Vŏl-uissent	Nōl-uissent	Māl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

Present.

(wanting.)	**Nōl-ī** **Nōl-ītĕ**	(wanting.)

Future.

(wanting.)	**Nōl-īto** **Nōl-īto** **Nōl-ītōtĕ** **Nōl-unto**	(wanting.)

INFINITIVE.

Present and Imperfect.

Vel-lĕ	**Nol-lĕ**	**Mal-lĕ**

Perfect and Pluperfect.

Vŏl-uissĕ	**Nōl-uissĕ**	**Māl-uissĕ**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Vŏl-ens	**Nōl-ens**	(wanting.)

EXERCISE XLIII.

A.—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

B.—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not* deceive; do not* lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the same things which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*) useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Be unwilling to follow bad examples, my son!

* Say, *Be unwilling to* .... Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. **Fĕro, tŭlī, ferrĕ, lātum;**—*to bear, carry, endure.*

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE
	1. *Present.*			4. *Perfect.*	
S.	**Fĕr-o**	**Fĕr-am**	*S.*	**Tŭl-ī**	**Tŭl-ĕrim**
	Fer-s	**Fĕr-ās**		**Tŭl-istī**	**Tŭl-ĕrīs**
	Fer-t	**Fĕr-ăt**		**Tŭl-ĭt**	**Tŭl-ĕrĭt**
P.	**Fĕr-ĭmŭs**	**Fĕr-āmŭs**	*P.*	**Tŭl-ĭmŭs**	**Tŭl-ĕrimŭs**
	Fer-tĭs	**Fĕr-ātĭs**		**Tŭl-istĭs**	**Tŭl-ĕritĭs**
	Fĕr-unt	**Fĕr-ant**		**Tŭl-ērunt** *or* **ērĕ**	**Tŭl-ĕrint**
	2. *Imperfect.*			5. *Pluperfect.*	
S.	**Fĕr-ēbam**	**Fer-rem**	*S.*	**Tŭl-ĕram**	**Tŭl-issem**
	Fĕr-ēbās	**Fer-rēs**		**Tŭl-ĕrās**	**Tŭl-issēs**
	Fĕr-ēbăt	**Fer-rĕt**		**Tŭl-ĕrăt**	**Tŭl-issĕt**
P.	**Fĕr-ēbāmŭs**	**Fer-rēmŭs**	*P.*	**Tŭl-ĕrāmŭs**	**Tŭl-issēmŭs**
	Fĕr-ēbātĭs	**Fer-rētĭs**		**Tŭl-ĕrātĭs**	**Tŭl-issētĭs**
	Fĕr-ēbant	**Fer-rent**		**Tŭl-ĕrant**	**Tŭl-issent**
	3. *Future-Simple.*			6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	**Fĕr-am**	(wanting.)	*S.*	**Tŭl-ĕro**	(wanting.)
	Fĕr-ēs			**Tŭl-ĕrĭs**	
	Fĕr-ĕt			**Tŭl-ĕrĭt**	
P.	**Fĕr-ēmŭs**		*P.*	**Tŭl-ĕrimŭs**	
	Fĕr-ētĭs			**Tŭl-ĕritĭs**	
	Fĕr-ent			**Tŭl-ĕrint**	

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	**Fĕr**	*Present.*	**Fĕr-ens**
	Fer-tĕ	*Future.*	**Lātūrŭs** (a, um
Future	**Fer-to**	SUPINES.	
	Fer-to		**Lātum**
	Fer-tōtĕ		**Lātŭ**
	Fĕr-unto		
INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
Pres. and Imp.	**Fer-rĕ**		
Perf. and Plup.	**Tŭl-issĕ**	*Gen.*	**Fĕr-endi**
Future.	**Lātūrŭs essĕ**		&c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. *Present.*			4. *Perfect.*	
S.	Fĕr-ŏr	Fĕr-ăr	*S.*	Lātŭs sum	Lātŭs sim
	Fer-rĭs, -rĕ	Fĕr-ārĭs, -ārĕ		Lātŭs ĕs	Lātŭs sīs
	Fer-tŭr	Fĕr-ātŭr		Lātŭs est	Lātŭs sĭt
P.	Fĕr-ĭmŭr	Fĕr-āmŭr	*P.*	Lātī sŭmŭs	Lātī sīmŭs
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī	Fĕr-āmĭnī		Lātī estĭs	Lātī sītĭs
	Fĕr-untŭr	Fĕr-antŭr		Lātī sunt	Lātī sint
	2. *Imperfect.*			5. *Pluperfect.*	
S.	Fĕr-ēbăr	Fer-rĕr	*S.*	Lātŭs ĕram	Lātŭs essem
	Fĕr-ēbārĭs, -ārĕ	Fer-rērĭs, -ērĕ		Lātŭs ĕrās	Lātŭs essēs
	Fĕr-ēbātŭr	Fer-rētŭr		Lātŭs ĕrăt	Lātŭs essĕt
P.	Fĕr-ēbāmŭr	Fer-rēmŭr	*P.*	Lātī ĕrāmŭs	Lātī essēmŭs
	Fĕr-ēbāmĭnī	Fer-rēmĭnī		Lātī ĕrātĭs	Lātī essētĭs
	Fĕr-ēbantŭr	Fer-rentŭr		Lātī ĕrănt	Lātī essent
	3. *Future-Simple.*			6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S.	Fĕr-ăr	(wanting.)	*S.*	Lātŭs ĕro	(wanting.)
	Fĕr-ērĭs, -ērĕ			Lātŭs ĕrĭs	
	Fĕr-ētŭr			Lātŭs ĕrĭt	
P.	Fĕr-ēmŭr		*P.*	Lātī ĕrĭmŭs	
	Fĕr-ēmĭnī			Lātī ĕrĭtĭs	
	Fĕr-entŭr			Lātī ĕrunt	

Imperative.

Present.	Fer-rĕ
	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī
Future.	Fer-tŏr
	Fer-tŏr
	Fĕr-untŏr

Infinitive.

Pres. and Imp.	Fer-ri
Perf. and Plup.	Lātŭs essĕ
Future.	Lātum īrī

Participles.

Perfect.	Lātŭs (a, um)
Gerundive.	Fĕr-endŭs (a, um)

The Compounds of fĕro are conjugated in the same way, *e. g.* :

Affĕro	(ad, fero),	attŭlī,	allātum,	afferrĕ,	*bring to.*
Aufĕro	(ab, fero),	abstŭlī,	ablātum,	auferrĕ,	*carry away.*
Effĕro	(ex, fero),	extŭlī,	ēlātum,	efferrĕ,	*carry out.*
Infĕro	(in, fero),	intŭlī,	illātum,	inferrĕ,	*carry into.*
Offĕro	(ob, fero),	obtŭlī,	oblātum,	offerrĕ,	*present.*
Perfĕro	(per, fero),	pertŭlī,	perlātum,	perferrĕ,	*bear through, endure.*
Praefĕro	(prae, fero),	praetŭlī,	praelātum,	praeferrĕ,	*prefer.*
Rĕfĕro	(re, fero),	rĕtŭlī / rettŭlī	rĕlātum,	rĕferrĕ,	*bring back.*

Exercise XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod misero atque inopi auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil

potest praeferri virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (secum). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

---

6. Ĕo, īvī or iī, īrĕ, ĭtum,—*to go.*

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
1. *Present.*		4. *Perfect.*	
S. Ĕ-o	E-am	*S.* Ī-vī *or* Ĭ-ī	Ī-vĕrim *or* Ĭ-ĕrim
Ī-s	E-ās	Ī-vistī &c.	Ī-vĕrĭs &c.
Ĭ-t	E-ăt	Ī-vĭt &c.	Ī-vĕrĭt &c.
P. Ī-mŭs	E-āmŭs	*P.* Ī-vĭmŭs &c.	Ī-vĕrimŭs &c.
Ī-tis	E-ātĭs	Ī-vistĭs &c.	Ī-vĕritis &c.
E-unt	E-ant	Ī-vērunt &c. *or* Ī-vērĕ	Ī-vĕrint &c.
2. *Imperfect.*		5. *Pluperfect.*	
S. Ī-bam	Ī-rem	*S.* Ī-vĕram *or* Ĭ-ĕram	Ī-vissem, Ĭ-issem, *or* I-ssem
Ī-bās	Ī-rēs	Ī-vĕrās &c.	Ī-vissēs &c.
Ī-băt	Ī-rĕt	Ī-vĕrăt &c.	Ī-vissĕt &c.
P. Ī-bāmŭs	Ī-rēmŭs	*P.* Ī-vĕrāmŭs &c.	Ī-vissēmŭs &c.
Ī-bātĭs	Ī-rētis	Ī-vĕrātĭs &c.	Ī-vissētĭs &c.
Ī-bant	Ī-rent	Ī-vĕrant &c.	Ī-vissent &c.
3. *Future-Simple.*		6. *Future-Perfect.*	
S. Ī-bo	(wanting.)	*S.* Ī-vĕro *or* Ĭ-ĕro	(wanting.)
Ī-bĭs		Ī-vĕrĭs &c.	
Ī-bĭt		Ī-vĕrĭt &c.	
P. Ī-bĭmŭs		*P.* Ī-vĕrimŭs &c.	
Ī-bĭtĭs		Ī-vĕritĭs &c.	
Ī-bunt		Ī-vĕrint &c.	

Imperative.

Present.	Ī Ī-tĕ	*Future.*	Ī-to Ī-to Ī-tōtĕ Ĕ-unto

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Pres. and Imp.	Ī-rĕ	*Present.*	Ī-ens (*Gen.* ĕ-untĭs)
Perf. and Plup.	Ī-vissĕ, Ĭissĕ, *or* issĕ	*Future.*	Ī-tūrŭs (ă, um)
Future.	Ī-tūrus essĕ		
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Gen.	Ĕ-undi, &c.		Ī-tum

The Compounds of *ĕo* are conjugated in the same way The following are the principal:—

ăb-ĕo,	ăb-ĭi,	ăb-ĭtum,	*to go away.*
ăd-eo,		&c.	*to go to.*
cŏ-eo,		&c.	*to join together.*
ex-eo,		&c.	*to go out.*
ĭn-eo, intrŏ-eo,		&c.	*to go into, enter.*
intĕr-eo,		&c.	*to perish.*
ŏb-eo,		&c.	*to meet*; esp. *to meet death; to die.*
pĕr-eo,		&c.	*to perish.*
prae-eo,		&c.	*to go before.*
praetĕr-eo,		&c.	*to pass by.*
rĕd-eo,		&c.	*to return.*
sŭb-eo,		&c.	*to go up to.*
trans-eo,		&c.	*to cross over.*

N.B. In the Compounds the form *ii* is used in preference to *ivi*.

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) spend (transeo) their life indolently. 2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city. 3. Caesar threw a bridge over the river, in-order-that his soldiers might cross on foot (pedibus). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle. 6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*). 8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross-over.

7. Fīo, factŭs sum, fīĕri,—*to become*, or *be made*, *to happen*.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	1. Present.	
S.	**Fī-o**	**Fī-am**
	Fī-s	**Fī-ās**
	Fī-t *or* **fĭ-t**	**Fī-ăt**
P.	**[Fī-mŭs]**	**Fī-āmŭs**
	[Fī-tĭs]	**Fī-ātĭs**
	Fī-unt	**Fī-ant**
	2. Imperfect.	
S.	**Fī-ēbam**	**Fī-ĕrem**
	Fī-ēbās	**Fī-ĕrēs**
	Fī-ēbăt	**Fī-ĕrĕt**
P.	**Fī-ēbāmŭs**	**Fī-ĕrēmŭs**
	Fī-ēbātĭs	**Fī-ĕrētĭs**
	Fī-ēbant	**Fī-ĕrent**

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.
	3. Future.	
S.	**Fī-am**	(wanting.)
	Fī-ēs	
	Fī-ĕt	
P.	**Fī-ēmŭs**	
	Fī-ētĭs	
	Fī-ent	
	4. Perfect.	
	Factŭs sum, &c.	**Factŭs sim, &c.**
	5. Pluperfect.	
	Factŭs ĕram, &c.	**Factŭs essem, &c.**
	6. Future-Perfect.	
	Factŭs ĕro, &c.	(wanting.)

Imperative.

Present.	**Fī, Fī-tĕ**

Participles.

Perfect.	**Factŭs (a, um)**
Gerundive.	**Făciendŭs (a, um)**

Infinitive.

Pres. and Imp.	**Fī-ĕrī**
Perf. and Plup.	**Factŭs essĕ**
Future.	**Factum īrī**

Fīo is used as the Passive of făcio.

Exercise XLVI.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo ignaviā immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done cannot be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter (hibernus, *adj.*) time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

8. NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

Besides Fio several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:—

Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,	*to dare, venture.*
Fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdĕre (usu. with *Dat.*),	*to trust.*
Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo, sŏlitus sum, sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

So too coeno, *to sup or dine*, often takes coenātus sum, and jūro, *to swear*, jurātus sum, instead of coenāvi, jurāvi. Such Verbs are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.

NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice : **ausūrŭs essĕ, &c.**

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Poenos navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fisus est rebus suis. 10. Gavisus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium repererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut.-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (finio). 10. The whole city rejoiced that (quod) the conspiracy had been discovered.

XXXII.—Impersonal Verbs.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

I. Verbs which denote Mental States.

Dĕcĕt, dĕcuĭt, dĕcērĕ,	*it is seemly, becomes.*
Dēdĕcĕt, dēdĕcuĭt, dēdĕcērĕ,	*it is unseemly, unbecoming.*
Lĭbĕt, lĭbuĭt & lĭbĭtum est, lĭbērĕ,	*it pleases.*
Lĭcĕt, lĭcuĭt & lĭcĭtum est, lĭcērĕ,	*it is lawful, it is allowed.*
Lĭquĕt, lĭquērĕ,	*it is clear.*
Mĭsĕrĕt *or* **mĭsĕrētŭr, mĭsĕrĭtum est, mĭsĕrērĕ,**	*it excites pity.*
Ŏportĕt, ŏportuĭt, ŏportērĕ,	*it behoves; (one) ought.*
Pĭgĕt, pĭguĭt & pĭgĭtum est, pĭgērĕ,	*it vexes.*
Plăcĕt, plăcuĭt *or* **plăcĭtum est, plăcērĕ,**	*it pleases.*
Poenĭtĕt, poenĭtuĭt, poenĭtērĕ,	*it causes sorrow, repents.*
Pŭdĕt, pŭduĭt *or* **pŭdĭtum est, pŭdērĕ,**	*it shames.*
Taedĕt, (pertaesum est,) taedērĕ,	*it disgusts, wearies.*

The Persons are expressed in the following way :—

Indicative.

Present.	**Pŭdĕt mē,**	*it shames me,* or *I am ashamed.*
	Pŭdĕt tē,	*it shames thee,* or *thou art ashamed.*
	Pŭdĕt eum,	*it shames him,* or *he is ashamed*
	Pŭdĕt nōs,	*it shames us,* or *we are ashamed.*
	Pŭdĕt vōs,	*it shames you,* or *ye are ashamed.*
	Pŭdĕt eōs,	*it shames them,* or *they are ashamed.*
Imperfect.	**Pŭdēbăt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,**	*it shamed me, thee, him, us, &c.,* or *I, thou, he, we, &c., were ashamed.*
Fut.-Simp.	**Pŭdēbĭt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,**	*it will shame me, thee, him, us, &c.,* or *I, thou, he, we, &c., will be ashamed.*
Perfect.	**Pŭduĭt mē, tē, eum,** &c.,	*I, thou, he, &c., was ashamed.*
Pluperfect.	**Pŭduĕrăt mē, tē, eum,** &c.,	*I, thou, he, &c., had been ashamed.*
Fut.-Perf.	**Pŭduĕrĭt mē, tē, eum,** &c.,	*I, thou, he, &c., will have been ashamed.*

And similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found; the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead; as, pudeat te, *let it shame thee,* or *be ashamed!*

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except lĭbet, lĭcet, lĭquet, and plăcet, which govern the Dative: as, mihi lĭbĕt, *it pleases me*; mihi lĭcĕt, *it is lawful for me, I am at liberty, &c.*

II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

Grandĭnăt, āvĭt, ārĕ.	*it hails.*
Ningĭt, ninxĭt, ningĕrĕ,	*it snows.*
Plŭĭt, plŭĭt *or* **plūvĭt, pluĕrĕ,**	*it rains.*
Tŏnăt, tŏnuĭt, tŏnārĕ,	*it thunders.*
Lūcescĭt, (illuxit,) **lūcescĕrĕ,**	*it becomes light.*
Vespĕrascĭt, vespĕrāvĭt, vespĕrascĕrĕ,	*evening comes on.*

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet poenitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere solebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (scelus). 2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

PART II.

SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given:—

XXXIII.—The Ablative after the Comparative.

Rule 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative: as, vīlius argentum est auro, ***silver is more common than gold.***

Exercise XLIX.

1. Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum. 2. Deus major et potentior est cunctis. 3. Nihil est majus amicitiā, nihil jucundius. 4. Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit. 5. Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientiā. 6. Elephanto nulla belluarum prudentior est. 7. Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. 8. Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute. 9. Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius. 10. Sol major et splendidior est lunā.

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens.

8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

XXXIV.—Ablative Absolute.

Rule 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute: as, sōlĕ ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīdērunt, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*] *the Romans saw the enemy.*

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute: as, Caesăr, expŏsĭtō exercĭtū, ăd hostēs contendĭt, *Caesar, having landed the army* [lit. *the army having been landed*], *hastens against the enemy.*

N.B. The pupil must carefully observe that it is not the Subject of the principal sentence, but the Accusative after the Verb which becomes the Ablative Absolute

Exercise L.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperatā pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpibus superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur aetas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vere, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisistratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

Note.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. *When the sun rises* (*the sun rising*), all (things) become brighter. 2. *When the moon had risen*, the night was made brighter. 3. *When Cato was slain*, the commonwealth perished. 4. *When these things were done*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, *after he had overcome the Gauls*, waged war with Pompeius. 6. *Having heard these things*, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. *Whilst Servius Tullius was king* (*Serv. Tull. being-king*), the city was fortified with a wall of-stone. 8. *Having learned these things*, he hastened into the territory of the enemy.

9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river* (*the river being joined by a bridge*), he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

B.—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbelam victo, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. His literis perlectis, consul comprehendi eos jubet. 4. Conjuratione detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catone mortuo, nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bello civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorum perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their* (eorum) *plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard of this disaster*, sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended* (*his*) *empire* as far as the Indus, Alexander returned towards the west. 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. (*With*) *you* (*for*) *our leader*, we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained* (adeptus*), our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of* (ex) *the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

* *Adeptus*, with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

XXXV.—The Accusative expressing Duration or Extent of Time, Distance, and Dimension.

Rule 20.—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case: as, sex ĕt vīgintī annōs regnāvĭt, *he reigned twenty-six years;* aggĕrem lātum pĕdēs trĕcentōs, altum pĕdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, *they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the accusative of *duration of time.*

Exercise LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et

viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high, and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were-distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty one years. 7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live a hundred years.

XXXVI.—Construction of the Names of Towns.

Rule 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmam prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In like manner are used, dŏmum (*to one's*) *home;* rūs, *to the country.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions: as, Consŭl Rōmā Athēnās prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

In like manner are used, dŏmō, *from home;* rūrĕ, *from the country.*

Exercise LII.

1. Curius primus Romam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedaemonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbelam victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rome and set out for Luceria. 6. I will

betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out to the country. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria (*acc.*). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*abl. absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

RULE 22.—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive case, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as,

Rōmae Consŭlēs, Athēnīs Archontes, Carthāgĭnĕ Suffĕtēs, sive jūdĭcēs, quŏtannīs creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*

Dĭŏnȳsiŭs Cŏrinthī puĕrōs dŏcēbăt, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

In like manner are used hŭmī, *on the ground;* dŏmī, *at home;* rūrī, *in the country.*

EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Conon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (*such*) Romae Fabricius, qualis (*as*) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (committo) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell* at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (et) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*imperf.*).

* Say, *I prefer to dwell.*

XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE.

RULE 23.—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing:* as, histŏriă narrăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus;* sentīmŭs călērĕ ignem,

nĭvem essĕ albam, dulcĕ (essĕ) mĕl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known;* justum est, *it is just;* vērīsĭmĭlĕ est, *it is probable;* constăt, *it is agreed, it is certain,* &c.: as, constăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō conditam essĕ; *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon rempublicam praemiis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertebat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam periturum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides daturos (esse). 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.

XXXVIII.—Direct Questions.

Rule 24.—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles: as, Quĭd ăgĭs? *What are you doing?* Pŭtas-nĕ? *Do you think?* Non-nĕ pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are **nĕ, num, utrum, ăn.** Of these **nĕ** is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction **que.** **Utrum** and **ăn** are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and **an** always with the second alternative.

Nĕ does not need to be expressed by any English word, as Visnĕ? *Do you wish?* Nonnĕ pŭtās? *Do you not think?*

Utrum . . . ăn may be translated by *whether . . . or,* as Utrum sōl ăn lūnă mājŏr est? *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?*

Num has a negative force, as Num ĭtă pŭtās = *You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

Exercise LV.

A.—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus? 3. Nonne sol longe major est quam luna? 4. Num ita audes dicere? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit? 7. Suntne haec vera bona? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentiā?

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

B.—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primarium fuisse virum? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolo animo facta esse? 4. Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis? 5. Utrum est turpitudo omnium malorum maximum an non? 6. Utrum haec benevolo an malevolo animo fecisti? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis?

9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, haec casu facta esse? tune ita credis? 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are-you-able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament-over his life? Does it not behove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

XXXIX.—Indirect Questions.

Rule 25.—Indirect questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, Rŏgābo quĭd factum sĭt, *I will ask what has been done;* Mīrum est quae fŭĕrĭt causă, *It is strange what the reason may have been;* Vĭdēbo num rĕdĭĕrĭt, *I will see whether he has returned.* The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense Subjunctive.

Present, Perfect, and Future Time.

PRESENT.	Scio quĭd ăgās,	*I know what you are doing.*
	Scio quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I know what you have done.*
	Scio quĭd actūrŭs sīs,	*I know what you are going to do.*
	Cognōvī quĭd ăgās,	*I have learnt what you are doing.*
	Cognōvī quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I have learnt what you have done.*
	Cognōvī quĭd actūrŭs sīs,	*I have learnt what you are going to do.*

	Audiam quĭd ăgās,	*I shall hear what you are doing.*
	Audiam quĭd ēgĕrĭs,	*I shall hear what you have done.*
	Audiam quĭd actūrŭs sīs,	*I shall hear what you are going to do.*

Past Time.

IMPERF.	Sciēbam quĭd ăgĕrēs,	*I knew what you were doing.*
	Sciēbam quĭd ēgissēs,	*I knew what you had done.*
	Sciēbam quĭd actūrŭs essēs,	*I knew what you were going to do.*
PERFECT.	Cognōvī quĭd ăgĕrēs,	*I learnt what you were doing.*
	Cognōvī quĭd ēgissēs,	*I learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvī quĭd actūrŭs essēs,	*I learnt what you were going to do.*
PLUPERFECT.	Cognōvĕram quĭd ăgĕrēs,	*I had learnt what you were doing*
	Cognōvĕram quĭd ēgissēs,	*I had learnt what you had done.*
	Cognōvĕram quĭd actūrŭs essēs,	*I had learnt what you were going to do.*

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises xxv., xxvi., xxvii., xxviii. (the Subjunctive Mood).

N.B. In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by **num**, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by **utrum** or **-ne.**

Exercise LVI.

N.B. In the following examples the Subjunctive must in English be rendered by the Indicative.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what it behoved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behoves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjicio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenerint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent

hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus anteponendi? 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse? 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepenumero quaerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisne esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicerintne hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you; whether you were or not (*nonne*) that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether it behoves a good citizen to side with his country in time of danger?

XL.—Additional Exercises on the Subjunctive Mood.

Rule 27.—Besides ŭt, nē, and quīn (see Ex. xxv., &c.), the Conjunctions quō, *that*, and quōmĭnŭs, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. Ŭt = *that, in order that, granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*; as, ĕo ŭt spectem lūdōs, *I am going in order that I may look at the games*; accĭdĭt ŭt nōn dŏmī essem, *it happened that I was not at home.*

2. Nē = *that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence: as, Haec făcĭo nē mē ĭnĭmīcum tĭbi pŭtēs, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, sĕquĭtŭr *ŭt* haec *nōn* vēră sint, *it follows that these things are not true.*

Obs. After verbs of *fearing*, ŭt has the meaning of *that not*, and nē of *that*: as, tĭmĕo ŭt dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdūcăt, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp*: tĭmĕo nē dux mīlĭtēs ē castrīs ēdūcăt, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp.*

3. Quīn is used after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*: as, dĭēs nullŭs est, quīn littĕras scrībam,

there is no day that I do not write a letter; nōn dŭbĭto quīn vērum dixĕrĭs, *I do not doubt you have spoken the truth.* (See Ex. xxv., C, &c.)

4. **Quō** is used for ŭt ĕō, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that:* haec lex dătă est, quō mălĕfĭcī dēterrērentŭr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred;* portās oppĭdī obstruxĭt, quō făcĭliŭs impĕtum hostium rĕtardārĕt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

5. **Quōmĭnŭs**, *that not,* is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting,* &c., and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive: as, aetās nōs non impĕdĭt quōmĭnŭs littĕras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

Exercise LVII.

A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (our) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fio*) that out of (them) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituo*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

N.B. In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with ut.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugne-

mus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting *that* I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp *but* (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

* **Quo** is used in preference to **ut** when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

C.—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstabat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you (*per te stetit*) that we did not obtain-possession-of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding-with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding-with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents. 8. I fear *that* we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear *that* we may *not* be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

XLI.—Use of the Supines.

Rule 28.—The Supine in **um** is used after verbs of motion: as, Lăcĕdaemŏniī Ăgēsĭlāum *bellātum* ĭn Ăsiam mīsērunt, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in ū is used after many adjectives: as, făcĭlĭs, *easy*, diffĭcĭlĭs, *difficult*, dulcĭs, *sweet*, &c., and with fās est, *it is lawful*, nĕfās est, *it is unlawful*, ŏpŭs est, *it is necessary:* as, rēs diffĭcĭlĭs factū est, *the thing is difficult to be done.*

Exercise LVIII.

1. Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum. 2. Veientes, pacem petitum, oratores Romam mittunt. 3. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium. 4. Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant. 5. Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulatum. 6. Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. 7. Pira dulcia sunt gustatu. 8. Difficile dictu est. 9. Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies. 10. Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went-to (adeo) Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste (*supine in* u). 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

XLII.—Use of the Gerund.

Rule 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing;* as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in

the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

Nom.	Lĕgĕre pulchră carmĭnă suāve est,	*reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*
Gen.	Ars pŭĕrōs ēdŭcandī diffĭcĭlĭs est,	*the art of educating boys is difficult.*
Dat.	Scrībendō ŏpĕram dăt,	*he devotes his care to writing.*
Acc.	Nātŭs ăd ăgendum,	*born for acting.*
Abl.	Littĕrās tractandō mens ăcŭĭtŭr,	*the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nătāre, *I learn swimming.*

EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime perniciosa est plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes venandi gratia comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (*pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for-the-sake-of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing (*infin.*) about (de) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen.* of *gerund*).

XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

RULE 30.—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, scrībendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary* or *fit to be written.*

The Gerundive may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, ămandŭs sum, *I am to be loved*, or *I ought to be loved;* ămandŭs ĕram, *I was to be loved*, or *I ought to have been loved*, &c. This is called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nomi-

native Case of its Noun: as, scrībenda est mĭhi ĕpistŏlă, *a letter must be* or *ought to be written by me*, or *I must* or *ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapientia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus aetas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an timendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (ita) to train-up (his) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (pro) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (prae) all other things (res) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

RULE 31.—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, obtempĕrandum est nōbīs (*dative*) virtūtĭs praeceptīs (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue:* cuīque (*dative*) ūtendum est jūdĭcĭō sŭō (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est judicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non

dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in everything. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

Exercise LXII.

N.B. The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive: as, stŭdium plūră cognoscendī, *the desire of learning more*, rather than stŭdium plūrium cognoscendōrum, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratiā initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculus probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained-up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (instruo) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (res). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (maxime) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (de) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (capio) from (ex) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (oportet) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

A SHORT SYNTAX.

A RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person: as, pŭellă currĭt, *the girl runs;* pŭellae currunt, *the girls run.*

Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case: as, servŭs tĭmĭdŭs, *a timid slave;* pŭellă tĭmĭdă, *a timid girl;* parvum oppĭdum, *a small town.*

Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, Fēlix est rex quem omnēs cīvēs laudant; *Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition:* as, Rōmŭlŭs, rex Rōmānōrum, *Romulus, king of the Romans.*

Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by sum, fīo, vĭdĕŏr, vŏcŏr, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă, *Britain is an island.*

Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative: as, ăquĭlă ālās hăbĕt, *the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in the Accusative: as, sex ĕt vīgintī annōs regnāvĭt, *he reigned twenty-six years;* aggĕrem lātum pĕdēs trĕcentōs, altum pĕdēs quinquāgintā exstruxĕrunt, *they heaped up a mound* 300 *feet broad and* 50 *feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

Genitive Case.

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other: as, Brĭtannĭă est insŭlă Eurōpae, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember*, *to forget*, *to pity*, are commonly followed by the Genitive: as, mĭsĕrōrum hŏmĭnum mĭsĕrōbĭmŭr, *we will pity the wretched men.*

Dative Case.

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, măgĭstĕr cŏlumbam pŭĕrō dăt, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

Ablative Case.

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, dŏmĭnŭs hastā servum occīdĭt, *the lord kills the slave with a spear*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, noctēs hĭĕmĕ longae sunt, *the nights are long in winter.*

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition ĭn, *in*: as, hostēs ĭn plānĭtĭē ĕrant, *the enemies were in the plain.*

§ 13. **Ūtŏr, frŭŏr, vescŏr, fungŏr,** govern the Ablative: as, săpĭentĕr ūtĭmĭnī tempŏrĕ, *use time wisely.*

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin often expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: as, sōlĕ ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vīdĕrunt, *when the sun had risen* [lit. *the sun having risen*], *the Romans saw the enemy.* (See also p. 89.)

Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions: as, Consŭl Rōmam prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions: as, Consŭl Rōmā Athēnās prŏfectŭs est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as, Rōmae Consŭlēs, Athēnīs Archontes, Carthāgĭnĕ Suffētēs, sīvĕ jūdĭcēs, quŏtannīs creābantŭr, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually;* Diŏnȳsĭŭs Cŏrinthī puĕrōs dŏcēbăt, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

Comparative Degree.

§ 18. The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin **quam**: as, aestātĕ diēs longiōrēs sunt *quam* noctēs, *in summer the days are longer than the nights.*

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative: as, vīlĭŭs argentum est aurō, *silver is more common than gold.*

Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, aedĭfĭco dŏmum, *I am building a house;* hăbĭtābo in ĕā, *I shall dwell in it.*

Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [aedĭfĭco dŏmum] ŭt in ĕā *hăbĭtem,* [*I am building a house*] *in order that I may dwell in it.* Here there is no doubt about the act of *building;* but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain and depends upon circumstances.

§ 22. The Conjunctions **ŭt**, *that, in order that*, and **nē**, *that not*, are construed with the Subjunctive: as, ĕo ŭt spectem lūdōs, *I am going in order that I may look at the games;* haec făcĭo nē mē ĭnĭmīcum tĭbi pŭtēs, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction **quīn** is used with the Subjunctive after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt:* as, dĭēs nullŭs est, quīn littĕrās scrībam, *there is no day that I do not write a letter;* nōn dŭbĭto quīn vērum dixĕrĭs, *I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction **quō** is used for **ŭt ĕō** with the

Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that:* haec lex dătă est, quō mălĕfĭcī dēterrērentŭr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction quōmĭnŭs, *that not,* is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.,* and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive: as, aetās nōs non impĕdĭt quōmĭnŭs littĕrās tractēmŭs, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question; that is, a question quoted as having been asked, or one dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, Rŏgābo quĭd factum sĭt, *I will ask what has been done;* Mīrum est quae fŭĕrĭt causă, *It is strange what the reason may have been;* Vĭdēbo num rĕdĭĕrĭt, *I will see whether he has returned.*

Note.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 95, 96.

The Infinitive.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive: as, Caesăr hostēs sŭpĕrārĕ pŏtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing:* as, histŏrĭă narrăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus:* sentīmŭs călērĕ ignem, nĭvem essĕ albam, dulcĕ (essĕ) mĕl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known;* justum est, *it is just;* vērīsĭmĭlĕ est, *it is probable;* constăt, *it is agreed, it is certain,* etc.: as, constăt Rōmam ā Rōmŭlō condĭtam essĕ, *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in um is used after verbs of motion: as, Lăcĕdaemŏnĭī Ăgēsĭlāum *bellātum* ĭn Ăsiam mīsērunt, *the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in ū is used after many adjectives: as, făcĭlĭs,

easy, diffĭcĭlĭs, *difficult*, dulcĭs, *sweet*, &c., and with fās est, *it is lawful*, nĕfās est, *it is unlawful*, ŏpŭs est, *it is necessary:* as, rēs diffĭcĭlĭs factū est, *the thing is difficult to be done.*

The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing;* as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

Nom.	Lĕgĕre pulchră carmĭnă suāve est,	*reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*
Gen.	Ars pŭĕrōs ēdŭcandī diffĭcĭlĭs est,	*the art of educating boys is difficult.*
Dat.	Scrībendō ŏpĕram dăt,	*he devotes his care to writing.*
Acc.	Nātŭs ăd ăgendum,	*born for acting.*
Abl.	Littĕrās tractandō mens ăcŭĭtŭr,	*the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, disco nătāre, *I learn swimming.*

The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, scrībendus, a, um, *to be written, necessary* or *fit to be written.*

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun: as, scrībenda est mĭhi ĕpistŏlă, *a letter must be* or *ought to be written by me*, or *I must* or *ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, obtempĕrandum est nōbīs (*dative*) virtūtĭs praeceptīs (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue:* cuīque (*dative*) ūtendum est jūdĭcĭō sŭō (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment.*

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

APPENDIX.

A. GREEK NOUNS.

First Declension.

	Fem.	Masc.	Masc.
Nom.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē, *abridgment.*	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ă, ā)
Abl.	Ĕpĭtŏm-ē.	Aenē-ā.	Anchīs-ē (ā).

Second Declension.

Nom.	Orphēŭs	Orphēŭs
Gen.	Orphĕī, Orphēī	Orphĕŏs
Dat.	Orphĕō	Orphēi, Orphī
Acc.	Orphĕum	Orphĕa
Voc.	Orphēŭ	Orphēŭ.
Abl.	Orphĕō.	

Nom.	Dēlŏs	Andrŏgĕōs
Gen.	Dēlī	Andrŏgĕī, Andrŏgĕō
Dat.	Dēlō	Andrŏgĕō
Acc.	Dēlŏn, Dēlum	Andrŏgĕōn, Andrŏgĕō
Voc.	Dēlĕ	Andrŏgĕōs
Abl.	Dēlō.	Andrŏgĕō.

Obs. Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnă*: as, *Andrŏgeōnă:* so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc. Athōnă.*

Third Declension.

	Sing.	Sing.
Nom.	Pĕriclēs	Pallas
Gen.	Pĕriclĭs, Pĕriclī	Pallădĭs, Pallădos
Dat.	Pĕriclī	Pallădi
Acc.	Pĕriclem. Pĕricleă	Pallădem, Pallădă
Voc.	Pĕriclēs, Pĕriclĕs, Pĕricle	Pallas
Abl.	Pĕriclĕ.	Pallădĕ.

Nom.	Părĭs	Sapphō
Gen.	Părĭdĭs, Părĭdŏs	Sapphūs, Sapphōnĭs
Dat.	Părĭdī	Sapphō, Sapphōnī
Acc.	Părĭdem, Părĭdă, Părin	Sapphō, Sapphōnem
Voc.	Parĭ	Sapphō
Abl.	Parĭdĕ.	Sapphōnĕ.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	chlămȳs, *a cloak.*	chlămȳdēs *or* -ĕs
Gen.	chlămȳdĭs, chlămȳdŏs	chlămȳdum
Dat.	chlămȳdī	chlămȳdĭbŭs
Acc.	chlămȳdem, chlămȳdă	chlămȳdēs, chlămȳdăs
Abl.	chlămȳdĕ.	chlămȳdĭbŭs.

B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine.*

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine.*

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, fās, *permitted by heaven*, nĕfās, *not permitted by heaven*, nĭhĭl, *nothing*, are *Neuter.*

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, conjux, *husband* or *wife*, are *Common.*

SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. First Declension.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, nauta, *a sailor.*

II. Second Declension.—Nouns in **us** and **er** are Masculine; those in **um** are Neuter.

A few Nouns in **us** are Feminine: names of trees, as mālus, *an apple-tree:* also, alvus, *the belly;* cŏlus, *a distaff;* hŭmus, *the ground;* vannus, *a winnowing fan;* arctus, *the constellation Bear;* carbăsus, *fine flax.*

Three Nouns in **us** are Neuter: as, vīrus, *poison;* vulgus, *the multitude;* pĕlăgus, *the (open) sea.*

III. Third Declension.—Nouns of the Third Declension are Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:—

1. *Masculine.*—(*a*) Nouns in **or** derived from verbs: as, ăm-or, *love,* from ămo, *I love.*

(*b*) Nouns in **tor** derived from verbs: as, ămā-tor, *a lover,* from ămo, *I love;* vic-tor, *a conqueror,* from vinco, *I conquer.*

2. *Feminine.* — (*a*) Nouns in **io** and **tio** derived from verbs: as, audī-tio, *hearing*, from audio, *I hear*.

(*b*) Nouns in **tūs** derived from Nouns: as, vir-tus, *manliness*, from vir, *a man*.

(*c*) Nouns in **tās** derived from Nouns and Adjectives: as, cīvĭ-tas, *citizenship*, from cīvis, *a citizen*; crūdēlĭ-tas, *cruelty*, from crūdēlis, *cruel*.

(*d*) Nouns in **tūdo** derived from Adjectives: as, longĭ-tūdo, *length*, from longus, *long*.

(*e*) Nouns in **trix** derived from Nouns in *tor*: as, vic-trix, *a female conqueror*, from vic-tor.

3. *Neuter.* — (*a*) Nouns in **e**: as, mărĕ, *the sea*.

(*b*) Nouns in **mĕn** derived from Verbs: as, flū-men, *a river*, from flu-ere, *to flow*.

(*c*) Nouns in **ŭs** and **ŭr**: as, ŏpus, *a work*; fulgur, *lightning*.

IV. Fourth Declension.—Nouns in **ŭs** are Masculine: those in **u** are Neuter.

A few Nouns in **us** are Feminine: namely, trĭbus, *a tribe* (a division of the Roman people); ăcus, *a needle*; portĭcus, *a portico*; dŏmus, *a house*; nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law*; ănus, *an old woman*; socrus, *a mother-in-law*; īdūs (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the Roman month); mănus, *a hand*.

V. Fifth Declension.—All are Feminine except dĭēs (*day*), which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural, and mĕrīdĭēs, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

I. The First or A Conjugation.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in āvi, ātum: as, ămo, ămāvi, ămātum, ămāre, *to love.* The following are exceptions:

Crĕpo,	crĕpui,	crĕpĭtum,	crĕpāre,	*to creak.*
Cŭbo,	cŭbui,	cŭbĭtum,	cŭbāre,	*to lie.*
Dŏmo,	dŏmui,	dŏmĭtum,	dŏmāre,	*to tame.*
Sŏno,[1]	sŏnui,	sŏnĭtum,	sŏnāre,	*to sound.*
Vĕto,	vĕtui,	vĕtĭtum,	vĕtāre,	*to forbid.*
Tŏno,	tŏnui,	—	tŏnāre,	*to thunder.*
Mĭco,	mĭcui,	—	mĭcāre,	*to glitter.*
Plĭco,	plĭcui,	{plĭcĭtum, plĭcātum,}	plĭcāre,	*to fold.*
Frĭco,	frĭcui,	frictum,	frĭcāre,	*to rub.*
Sĕco,[2]	sĕcui,	sectum,	sĕcāre,	*to cut.*
Jŭvo,[3]	jūvi,	jūtum,	jŭvāre,	*to assist.*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	{lăvātum, lautum,}	lăvāre,	*to wash.*
Do,	dĕdi,	dătum,	dăre,	*to give.*
Sto,	stĕti,	statum,	stāre,	*to stand.*

Note.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the Supines; but

1. Sŏno	*has*	sŏnātūrus.
2. Sĕco	"	sĕcātūrus.
3. Jŭvo	"	jŭvātūrus.

II. The Second or E Conjugation.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in uī and ĭtum: as, mŏneo, mŏnui, mŏnĭtum, mŏnēre, *to advise.* The following are exceptions:—

1. *Perfect*—ui. *Supine*—tum.

Dŏceo,	docui,	doctum,	dŏcēre,	*to teach.*
Tĕneo,	tĕnui,	tentum,	tĕnēre,	*to hold.*
Misceo,	miscui,	{mixtum, mistum,}	miscēre,	*to mix.*
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	*to roast.*
Sorbeo,	{sorbui, sorpsi,}		sorbēre,	*to suck up.*
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	*to assess, think.*

2. *Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	*to blot out, destroy*
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	*to spin.*
{Pleo, only in composition.				
{Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	*to fill up.*
Abŏleo,	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlēre,	*to abolish.*

3. *Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prandēre,	*to breakfast.*
Sĕdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sĕdēre,	*to sit.*
Vĭdeo,	vīdi,	vīsum,	vĭdēre,	*to see.*
Strīdeo,	strīdi,	—	strīdēre,	*to creak.*

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordēre,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	*to shear.*

4. *Perfect*—i (vi). *Supine*—tum.

Căveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	căvēre,	*to guard oneself.*
Făveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	făvēre,	*to favour.*
Fŏveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fŏvēre,	*to cherish.*
Mŏveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mŏvēre,	*to move.*
Vŏveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vŏvēre,	*to vow.*

Without Supine.

Păveo,	pāvi,	—	păvēre,	*to fear.*
Ferveo,	fervi, ferbui,	—	fervēre,	*to boil.*
Connīveo,	connīvi, connixi,	—	connīvēre,	*to wink.*

5. *Perfect*—si. *Supine*—tum *and* sum.

Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	*to increase.*
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	*to indulge.*
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	*to twist.*
Ardeo,	arsi,	arsum,	ardēre,	*to blaze.*
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	*to stick.*
Jŭbeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jŭbēre,	*to order.*
Măneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mănēre,	*to remain.*
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	*to stroke.*
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	*to milk.*
Rīdeo,	risi,	rīsum,	rīdēre,	*to laugh.*
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	*to advise.*
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	*to wipe.*
Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	*to be cold.*
Frīgeo,	frixi,	—	frīgēre,	*to be cold.*
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	*to shine.*
Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	*to be light.*
Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	*to grieve.*
Turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	*to swell.*
Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	*to press.*

6. *The Neuter-Passives.*

Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	*to dare.*
Gaudeo,	gāvīsus sum,	—	gaudēre,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo,	sŏlĭtus sum,	—	sŏlēre,	*to be accustomed.*

III. The Third (Consonant or U) Conjugation.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

1. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials* B, P.

(*a*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpĕre,	*to pluck.*
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbĕre,	*to peel.*
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbĕre,	*to marry.*
Rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpĕre,	*to creep.*
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpĕre,	*to scratch.*
Scrībo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scrībĕre,	*to write.*
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpĕre,	*to crawl.*

(*b*). *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum** *or* **ĭtum.**

{Cumbo,				
{Incumbo,	incŭbui,	incŭbĭtum,	incumbĕre,	*to lie upon.*
Strĕpo,	strĕpui,	strĕpĭtum,	strĕpĕre,	*to make a noise.*

(*c*). *Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**tum** *or* wanting.

Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpĕre,	*to burst.*
Bĭbo,	bĭbi,	—	bĭbĕre,	*to drink.*
Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambĕre,	*to lick.*
Scăbo,	scābi,	—	scăbĕre,	*to scratch.*

2. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals* C, G, H, Q, X.

(*a*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Note.—*Cs* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dīcĕre,	*to say.*
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcĕre,	*to lead.*
Cŏquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cŏquĕre,	*to cook.*
Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingĕre,	*to surround.*
{(Flīgo, not	used,	—	—	*to strike.*)
{Afflīgo,	afflixi,	afflictum,	afflīgĕre,	*to strike to the ground.*
Frīgo,	frixi,	{frictum, frixum,}	frīgĕre,	*to parch, to fry.*
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungĕre,	*to join.*
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingĕre,	*to lick.*
{(Mungo, not used.)				
{Ēmungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungĕre,	*to blow the nose.*
Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangĕre,	*to beat.*

Rĕgo,	rexi,	rectum,	rĕgĕre,	*to direct, rule.*
Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgĕre,	*to suck.*
Tĕgo,	texi,	tectum,	tĕgĕre,	*to cover.*
Tingo, / Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	tingĕre, / tinguĕre,	*to dip.*
Ungo, / Unguo,	unxi,	unctum,	ungĕre, / unguĕre,	*to anoint.*
(Stinguo, not used.)				
Exstinguo,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguĕre,	*to extinguish.*
Trăho,	traxi,	tractum,	trăhĕre,	*to drag.*
Vĕho,	vexi,	vectum,	vĕhĕre,	*to carry, to draw.*
Ango,	anxi,		angĕre,	*to vex.*
Ningit,	ninxit,		ningĕre,	*to snow.*
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	fingĕre,	*to form, to invent.*
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingĕre,	*to paint.*
Stringo,	strinxi,	strictum,	stringĕre,	*to grasp.*

(*b*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**sum** *and* **xum.**

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergĕre,	*to sink.*
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargĕre,	*to scatter.*
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergĕre,	*to wipe.*
Fīgo,	fixi,	fixum,	fīgĕre,	*to fix.*
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectĕre,	*to bend.*
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectĕre,	*to bind.*
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectĕre,	*to comb.*
Plecto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectĕre,	*to plait.*

(*c*). *Perfect*—**i** (*with Reduplication*). *Supine*—**sum** *and* **tum.**

Pango,	pĕpīgi,	pactum,	pangĕre,	*to fix.*
Parco,	pĕperci,	parsum,	parcĕre,	*to spare.*
Pungo,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	pungĕre,	*to prick.*
Tango,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	tangĕre,	*to touch.*
Disco,	dĭdĭci,		discĕre,	*to learn.*
Posco,	pŏposci,		poscĕre,	*to demand.*

(*d*). *Perfect*—**i** (*with vowel of Stem lengthened*).

Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	ăgĕre,	*to do.*
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangĕre,	*to break.*
Īco,	īci,	ictum,	īcĕre,	*to strike.*
Lĕgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lĕgĕre,	*to read.*
Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquĕre,	*to leave.*
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincĕre,	*to conquer.*

(*e*). *Perfect*—**ui.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texĕre,	*to weave.*

(*f*). *Guttural Stem disguised.*

Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluĕre,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struĕre,	*to pile up.*
Vīvo,	vixi,	victum,	vīvĕre,	*to live.*

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals* D, T.

(*a*). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	clauděre,	*to shut.*
Dīvĭdo,	dīvīsi,	dīvīsum,	dīvĭděre,	*to divide.*
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laeděre,	*to strike, to injure.*
Lūdo,	lūsi,	lūsum,	lūděre,	*to play.*
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plauděre,	*to clap the hands.*
Rādo,	rāsi,	rāsum,	rāděre,	*to scrape.*
Rōdo,	rōsi,	rōsum,	rōděre,	*to gnaw.*
Trūdo,	trūsi,	trūsum,	trūděre,	*to thrust.*
{Vādo,	[compounds, -si, -sum]		vāděre,	*to go.*
{Invādo,	invāsi,	invāsum,	invāděre,	*to go against.*
Cēdo,	cessi,	cessum,	cēděre,	*to yield.*
Mitto,	mīsi,	missum,	mittěre,	*to send.*

(*b*). *Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cădo,	cĕcĭdi,	căsum,	căděre,	*to fall.*
Caedo,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	caeděre,	*to strike, to cut.*
Pendo,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	penděre,	*to hang, to weigh.*
Tendo,	tĕtendi,	{tensum, tentum,	tenděre,	*to stretch.*
Tundo,	tŭtŭdi,	{tunsum, tūsum,	tunděre,	*to beat.*
Do in compos.,				*to put.*
Abdo,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	abděre,	*to put away, to hide.*
Addo,	addĭdi,	addĭtum,	adděre,	*to put to, to add.*
Condo,	condĭdi,	condĭtum,	conděre,	*to put together, to build, conceal.*
Dēdo,	dēdĭdi,	dēdĭtum,	dēděre,	*to put down, to surrender.*
Ēdo,	ēdĭdi,	ēdĭtum,	ēděre,	*to put forth, to publish.*
Indo,	indĭdi,	indĭtum,	inděre,	*to put on.*
Perdo,	perdĭdi,	perdĭtum,	perděre,	*to ruin, to lose.*
Prōdo,	prōdĭdi,	prōdĭtum,	prōděre,	*to betray.*
Reddo,	reddĭdi,	reddĭtum,	redděre,	*to put back, to restore.*
Subdo,	subdĭdi,	subdĭtum,	subděre,	*to put under, to substitute.*
Trādo,	trādĭdi,	trādĭtum,	trāděre,	*to put across, to deliver.*
Crēdo,	crēdĭdi,	crēdĭtum,	crēděre,	*to believe.*
Vendo,	vendĭdi,	vendĭtum,	venděre,	*to sell.*
Sisto,	stĭti,	stătum,	sistěre,	*to cause to stand.*

(*c*). *Perfect*—**i.** *Supine*—**sum.**

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accenděre,	*to set on fire.*
Cūdo,	cūdi,		cūděre,	*to hammer.*

Ĕdo,	ēdi,	ēsum,	ĕdĕre,	*to eat.*
(Fendo, not used,				*to strike.*)
Dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensum,	dēfendĕre,	*to ward off, to defend.*
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendĕre,	*to strike against, to assault.*
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsum,	fundĕre,	*to pour.*
Incendo,	incendi,	incensum,	incendĕre,	*to burn.*
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansum,	mandĕre,	*to chew.*
Pando,	pandi,	pansum *or* passum,	pandĕre,	*to spread.*
Prĕhendo,	prĕhendi,	prĕhensum,	prĕhendĕre,	*to grasp.*
Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandĕre,	*to climb.*
Strīdo, Strīdeo,	strīdi,		strīdĕre,	*to creak.*
Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertĕre,	*to turn.*
Findo,	fĭdi,	fissum,	findĕre,	*to cleave.*
Scindo,	scĭdi,	scissum,	scindĕre,	*to tear.*
Frendo, Frendeo,		fressum, frēsum,	frendĕre,	*to gnash the teeth.*

(d). Other Forms.

Mĕto,	messui,	messum,	mĕtĕre,	*to mow.*
Pĕto,	pĕtīvi *or* pĕtĭi,	pĕtītum,	pĕtĕre,	*to seek.*
Sīdo,	sēdi (rarely sīdi),	—	sīdĕre,	*to sit down.*
Sterto,	stertui,	—	stertĕre,	*to snore.*
Fīdo,	fīsus sum,	—	fīdĕre,	*to trust.*

4. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids* L, M, N.

(a). Perfect—**ui.** *Supine*—**ĭtum** *or* **tum.**

Ălo,	ălui,	ălĭtum *or* altum,	ălĕre,	*to nourish.*
Cŏlo,	cŏlui,	cultum,	cŏlĕre,	*to till.*
Consŭlo,	consŭlui,	consultum,	consŭlĕre,	*to consult.*
Mŏlo,	mŏlui,	mŏlĭtum,	mŏlĕre,	*to grind.*
Occŭlo,	occŭlui,	occultum,	occŭlĕre,	*to conceal.*
Vŏlo,	vŏlui,	—	velle,	*to wish.*
Frĕmo,	frĕmui,	frĕmĭtum,	frĕmĕre,	*to roar.*
Gĕmo,	gĕmui,	gĕmĭtum,	gĕmĕre,	*to groan.*
Trĕmo,	trĕmui,	—	trĕmĕre,	*to tremble.*
Vŏmo,	vŏmui,	vŏmĭtum,	vŏmĕre,	*to vomit.*
Gigno,	gĕnui,	gĕnĭtum,	gignĕre,	*to produce.*

(b). Perfect with Reduplication.

Fallo,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	fallĕre,	*to deceive.*
Pello,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,	pellĕre,	*to drive.*
Căno,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	cănĕre,	*to sing.*

(c). *Perfect*—**si.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmĕre,	*to adorn.*
Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmĕre,	*to take away.*
Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmĕre,	*to take forth.*
Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmĕre,	*to take up.*
Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnĕre,	*to despise.*

(d). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	percŭli,	perculsum,	percellĕre,	*to strike down.*
Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallĕre,	*to play on a stringed instrument.*
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellĕre,	*to pluck.*
Tollo,	sustŭli,	sublātum,	tollĕre,	*to raise up.*
Ĕmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ĕmĕre,	*to take* or *buy.*
Prĕmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prĕmĕre,	*to press.*
Līno,	lēvi *or* līvi	lĭtum,	lĭnĕre,	*to smear.*
Sĭno,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	sĭnĕre,	*to permit.*

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid* R.

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernĕre,	*to sift, to divide.*
Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernĕre,	*to despise.*
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternĕre,	*to strew.*
Gĕrō,	gessi,	gestum,	gĕrĕre,	*to carry.*
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrĕre,	*to burn.*
Curro,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	currĕre,	*to run.*
Fĕro,	tŭli,	lātum,	ferre,	*to bear, carry.*
Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaerĕre,	*to seek.*
Sĕro,	sĕrui,	sertum,	sĕrĕre,	*to put in rows, to plait.*
Sĕro,	sēvi,	sătum,	sĕrĕre,	*to sow.*
Tĕro,	trīvi,	trītum,	tĕrĕre,	*to rub.*
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrĕre,	*to sweep.*

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* S, X.

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	depsĕre,	*to knead.*
Pinso,	pinsui, pinsi,	pinsĭtum, pinsum,	pinsĕre,	*to pound.*
Pīso,	—	pĭstum,	pīsĕre,	*to pound.*
Vīso,	vīsi,	—	vīsĕre,	*to visit.*
Pōno,	pŏsui,	pŏsĭtum,	pōnĕre,	*to place.*
Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcessĕre,	*to send for.*
Căpesso,	căpessīvi,	căpessītum,	căpessĕre,	*to take in hand.*
Făcesso,	făcessi,	făcessītum,	făcessĕre,	*to make, to cause.*
Lăcesso,	lăcessīvi,	lăcessītum,	lăcessĕre,	*to provoke.*

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in* U, V.

Perfect—**i.** *Supine*—**tum.**

Ăcuo,	ăcui,	ăcūtum,	ăcuĕre,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguĕre,	*to prove.*

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuĕre,	*to soak.*
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induĕre,	*to put on.*
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuĕre,	*to put off.*
Mĭnuo,	mĭnui,	mĭnūtum,	mĭnuĕre,	*to lessen.*
Rŭo,*	rui,	rŭtum,	ruĕre,	*to rush.*
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuĕre,	*to spit.*
Stătuo,	stătui,	stătūtum,	stătuĕre,	*to set up.*
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suĕre,	*to sew.*
Trĭbuo,	trĭbui,	trĭbūtum,	trĭbuĕre,	*to distribute*
Lăvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lăvĕre,	*to wash.*
(See also 1 Conj.)		lōtum,		
Solvo,	solvi,	sŏlūtum,	solvĕre,	*to loosen.*
Volvo,	volvi,	vŏlūtum,	volvĕre,	*to roll.*
Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruĕre,	*to agree.*
Luo,†	lui,	—	luĕre,	*to atone.*
(Nuo,				*to nod.*)
Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuĕre,	*to refuse.*
Annuo,	annui,	—	annuĕre,	*to assent.*
Mĕtuo,	mĕtui,	—	mĕtuĕre,	*to fear.*
Pluit,	pluit *or* plūvit,	—	pluĕre,	*to rain.*
Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuĕre,	*to sneeze.*

* rŭo, *Fut. Participle* ruĭtūrus. † lŭo, *Fut. Participle* luĭtūrus.

8. *Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in* sco.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive;* that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines · as, incălesco, incălui, incălescĕre, *to grow warm,* from căleo, călui, călēre, *to be warm.* The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines :—

Ăbŏlesco,*	ăbŏlēvi,	ăbŏlĭtum,	ăbŏlescĕre,	*to grow out of use.*
Ădŏlesco,*	ădŏlēvi,	ădultum,	ădŏlescĕre,	*to grow up.*
Exŏlesco,*	exŏlēvi,	exŏlĭtum,	exŏlescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Cŏălesco, (ălo)	cŏălui,	cŏălĭtum,	cŏălescĕre,	*to grow together.*
Concŭpisco, (cŭpio)	concŭpīvi,	concŭpītum,	concŭpiscĕre,	*to desire.*
Convălesco, (văleo)	convălui,	convălĭtum,	convălescĕre,	*to grow strong.*
Exardesco, (ardeo)	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescĕre,	*to take fire.*
Invĕtĕrasco, (invĕtĕro)	invĕtĕrāvi,	invĕtĕrātum,	invĕtĕrascĕre,	*to grow old.*
Rĕvīvisco, (vīvo)	rĕvixi,	rĕvictum,	rĕvīviscĕre,	*to come to life again.*
Scisco, (scio)	scīvi,	scītum,	sciscĕre,	*to seek to know, to enact*

* Ăbŏlesco, ădŏlesco, exŏlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ŏleo, *to grow.*

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

Consĕnesco, (sĕnex)	consĕnui,	—	consĕnescĕre,	*to grow old.*
Ingrăvesco, (grăvis)	—	—	ingrăvescĕre,	*to grow heavy.*
Jŭvĕnesco, (jŭvĕnis)	—	—	jŭvĕnescĕre,	*to grow young.*
Mātūresco, (mātūrus)	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescĕre,	*to grow ripe.*
Obmūtesco, (mūtus)	obmūtui,		obmūtescĕre,	*to grow dumb.*

The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:—

Cresco,		crētum,	crescĕre,	*to grow.*
Glisco,			gliscĕre,	*to swell.*
Hisco,			hiscĕre,	*to gape.*
Nosco,*	nōvi,	nōtum,	nōscĕre,	*to learn, to know.*
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascĕre,	*to feed.*
Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescĕre,	*to become quiet.*
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescĕre,	*to grow accustomed.*

* The Present signifies *I learn;* the Perfect, *I know;* the Pluperfect, *I knew.*

THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

Căpio,	cēpi,	captum,	căpĕre,	*to take.*
Făcio,	fēci,	factum,	făcĕre,	*to make.*
Jăcio,	jēci,	jactum,	jăcĕre,	*to throw.*
Fŭgio,	fūgi,	fŭgĭtum,	fŭgĕre,	*to flee.*
Fŏdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fŏdĕre,	*to dig.*
Răpio,	răpui,	raptum,	răpĕre,	*to seize.*
Părio,*	pĕpĕri,	partum,	părĕre,	*to bring forth.*
Quătio,	(no perfect),	quassum,	quătĕre,	*to shake.*
Cŭpio,	cŭpīvi,	cŭpītum,	cŭpĕre,	*to desire.*
Săpio,	săpīvi,	—	săpĕre,	*to taste.*
Lăcio,			lăcĕre,	*to draw, entice* — rare, except in composition.
Spĕcio,			spĕcĕre,	*to look* — rare, except in composition.

* părio, *Future Participle* părĭtūrus.

IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in īvi; the Supine in ītum: as, audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *to hear.* The following are exceptions:—

Farcio,	farsi,	fartum, (farctum)	farcīre,	*to cram.*
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcīre,	*to prop.*

Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurīre,	*to draw* (water).
Sancio,		sancītum *or* sanctum,	sancīre,	*to ratify.*
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcīre,	*to patch.*
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentīre,	*to feel, to think.*
Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepīre,	*to fence in.*
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincīre,	*to bind.*
Ĕo,	īvi,	ĭtum,	īre,	*to go.*
Sălio,	sălui *or* sălii,	saltum,	sălīre,	*to leap.*
Sĕpĕlio,	sĕpĕlīvi,	sĕpultum,	sĕpĕlīre,	*to bury.*
Vĕnio,	vēni,	ventum,	vĕnīre,	*to come.*
Ămĭcio,	ămĭcui *or* amixi,	ămictum,	ămĭcīre,	*to clothe.*
Ăpĕrio,	ăpĕrui,	ăpertum,	ăpĕrīre,	*to open.*
Ŏpĕrio,	ŏpĕrui,	ŏpertum,	ŏpĕrīre,	*to cover.*

V. Deponents.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

2. Second Conjugation:

Făteor,	fassus sum,	fătēri,	*to confess.*
Liceor,	lĭcĭtus sum,	lĭcēri,	*to bid at a sale.*
Mĕdeor,	—	mĕdēri,	*to heal.*
Mĕreor,	mĕrĭtus sum,	mĕrēri,	*to earn, to deserve*
Mĭsĕreor,	mĭsĕrĭtus sum *or* mĭsertus sum,	mĭsĕrēri,	*to take pity on.*
Pollĭceor,	pollĭcĭtus sum,	pollĭcēri,	*to promise.*
Reor,	rătus sum,	rēri,	*to think.*
Tueor,	tuĭtus sum,	tuēri,	*to protect.*
Vĕreor,	vĕrĭtus sum,	vĕrēri,	*to fear.*

3. Third Conjugation:

Fruor,*	fruĭtus sum *or* fructus sum,	frui,	*to enjoy.*
Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	*to perform.*
Grădior,	gressus sum,	grădi,	*to step.*
Lābor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	*to slip.*
Līquor,	—	līqui,	*to melt.*
Lŏquor,	lŏcūtus sum,	lŏqui,	*to speak.*
Mŏrior,†	mortuus sum,	mŏri,	*to die.*
Nītor,	nixus sum *or* nīsus sum,	nīti,	*to strain.*
Pătior,	passus sum,	păti,	*to suffer.*
Quĕror,	questus sum,	quĕri,	*to complain.*

* fruor, *Future Participle* fruĭtūrus.
† mŏrior, „ „ mŏrĭtūrus.

Ringor,		ringi,	*to show the teeth, to snarl.*
Sĕquor,	sĕcūtus sum,	sĕqui,	*to follow.*
Ūtor,	ūsus sum,	ūti,	*to use.*
{(Verto) Rĕvertor,	(rĕversus sum),	rĕverti,	*to return.*
{(Plecto) Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	*to embrace.*
Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	*to embrace.*
{Ăpiscor,	aptus sum,	ăpisci,	*to obtain.*
Ădĭpiscor,	ădeptus sum,	ădĭpisci,	*to obtain.*
Commĭniscor,	commentus sum,	commĭnisci,	*to devise.*
Rĕmĭniscor,	—	rĕmĭnisci,	*to remember.*
Dēfĕtiscor,	dēfessus sum,	dēfĕtisci,	*to grow weary.*
Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	*to wake up.*
{Īrascor,	—	īrasci,	*to be angry.*
Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	*to obtain by chance.*
Nascor,	nātus sum,	nasci,	*to be born.*
Oblīviscor,	oblītus sum,	oblīvisci,	*to forget.*
Păciscor,	pactus sum,	păcisci,	*to make an agreement.*
Prŏfĭciscor,	prŏfectus sum,	prŏfĭcisci,	*to set out.*
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	*to avenge.*
Vescor,		vesci,	*to eat.*

4. Fourth Conjugation:

Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentīri,	*to agree to.*
Blandior,	blandītus sum,	blandīri,	*to flatter.*
Expĕrior,	expertus sum,	expĕrīri,	*to try.*
Largior,	largītus sum,	largīri,	*to give bountifully.*
Mentior,	mentītus sum,	mentīri,	*to lie.*
Mētior,	mensus sum,	mētīri,	*to measure.*
Mōlior,	mōlītus sum,	mōlīri,	*to labour.*
Oppĕrior,	{oppertus sum, oppĕrītus sum,	}oppĕrīri,	*to wait for.*
Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordīri,	*to begin.*
Orior,*	ortus sum,	ŏrīri,	*to rise.*
Partior,	partītus sum,	partīri,	*to divide.*
Pŏtior,†	pŏtītus sum,	pŏtīri,	*to obtain possession of.*
Sortior,	sortītus sum,	sortīri,	*to take by lot.*

* ŏrior, *Future Participle* ŏrĭtūrus. In some tenses the forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation: *Pres. Indic.* ŏrĕrĭs or ŏrīrĭs, ŏrĭtur, ŏrĭmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ŏrĕrer and ŏrīrer are found.

† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both pŏtīrĕr and pŏtĕrĕr are found.

D. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. Coepī, *I began.*
II. Mĕmĭnī, *I remember.*
III. Ōdī, *I hate.*

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.	Coepī	Mĕmĭnī	Ōdī.
Pluperf.	Coepĕram	Mĕmĭnĕram	Ōdĕram.
Fut.-Perf.	Coepĕro	Mĕmĭnĕro	Ōdĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.	Coepĕrim	Mĕmĭnĕrim	Ōdĕrim.
Pluperf.	Coepissem	Mĕmĭnissem	Ōdissem.

IMPERATIVE.

Future.	(wanting.)	Mĕmento Mĕmentōtĕ	(wanting.)

INFINITIVE.

Perfect.	Coepissĕ	Mĕmĭnissĕ	Ōdissĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

Future.	Coeptūrŭs	(wanting.)	Ōsūrŭs.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect. Coeptŭs sum. *Pluperf.* Coeptŭs ĕram.
Fut.-Perf. Coeptŭs ĕro.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect. Coeptŭs sim. *Pluperf.* Coeptŭs essem.

INFINITIVE.

Perfect. Coeptŭs essĕ.

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice: as, Săguntum coeptum est oppugnārī, *Saguntum was begun to be besieged.*

IV. Āio, *I say:*—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	Present.	*Imperfect.*	
S. Āio	—	*S.* Āiēbam	—
Āĭs	Āiās	Āiēbās	—
Āĭt	Āiăt	Āiēbăt	—
P. —	—	*P.* Āiēbāmŭs	—
—	—	Āiēbātĭs	—
Āiunt	Āiant	Āiēbant.	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—Āiens.

V. Inquam, *say I*:—

Indicative.		Future.	Perfect.
Present.	*Imperfect.*	—	—
Inquam	Inquĭēbam	Inquĭēs	Inquistī
Inquĭs	Inquĭēbās	Inquĭĕt	Inquĭt
Inquĭt	Inquĭēbăt	Imperative.	
Inquĭmŭs	Inquĭēbāmŭs	*Present.*	*Future.*
Inquĭtĭs	Inquĭēbātĭs	Inquĕ	Inquito.
Inquĭunt	Inquĭēbant	Inquĭtĕ	

Obs. Inquam, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VI. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent:—

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.
	Present.	*Present. S.* Fārĕ	Fārī
Fātur	—		
	Future.		
Fābŏr, fābĭtŭr	—		
	Perfect.		
Fātus sum, &c.	Fātus sim, &c.		
	Pluperfect.		
Fātŭs ĕram	Fātŭs essem		

Participles.

Present. Fantis, &c. (without a *Nom.*)
Perfect. Fātus (ă, um)
Gerundive. Fandŭs (ă, um)

Supine—Fātū.
Gerund—Fandī, Fandō.

VII. The following Imperatives.

1. **Ăvē** (or **hăvē**), **ăvētĕ**, *hail.* Infin. **ăvērĕ.**
2. **Salvē, salvētĕ**, *hail, welcome.* Infin. **salvērĕ.**
3. **Cĕdŏ, cĕdĭtĕ** (or **cettĕ**), *give me.*
4. **Ăpăgĕ, ăpăgĭtĕ**, *begone.*

VOCABULARIES.

m. = masculine.
f. = feminine.
n. = neuter.
c. = common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

Vocabulary 1.

ăla, *f.*	*a wing.*
ăquĭla, *f.*	*an eagle.*
cŏlōnĭa, *f.*	*a colony.*
cŏlumba, *f.*	*a dove.*
cŏrōna, *f.*	*a crown.*
fēmĭna, *f.*	*a woman.*
fīlĭa, *f.*	*a daughter.*
insŭla, *f.*	*an island.*
mensa, *f.*	*a table.*
ōra, *f.*	*a coast.*
pĕcūnĭa, *f.*	*money.*
porta, *f.*	*a gate.*
pŭella, *f.*	*a girl.*
rēgīna, *f.*	*a queen.*
Rōma, *f.*	*Rome* (the city).
rŏsa, *f.*	*a rose.*

Vocabulary 2.

agrĭcŏla, *m.*	*a husbandman.*
ămīcĭtĭa, *f.*	*friendship.*
Brĭtannĭa, *f.*	*Britain.*
causa, *f.*	*a cause.*
Eurōpa, *f.*	*Europe.*
Gallĭa, *f.*	*Gaul* (now France).
glōrĭa, *f.*	*glory.*
Graecĭa, *f.*	*Greece.*
incŏla, *c.*	*an inhabitant.*
ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, *f.*	*enmity.*
Ĭtălĭa, *f.*	*Italy.*
nauta, *m.*	*a sailor.*
patrĭa, *f.*	*a native land, country.*
pŏēta, *m.*	*a poet.*
pugna, *f.*	*a battle.*
Sĭcĭlĭa, *f.*	*Sicily.*
vīta, *f.*	*life.*

Vocabulary 3.

ămīcus, *m.*	*a friend.*
ăvus, *m.*	*a grandfather.*
dŏmĭnus, *m.*	*a lord, master.*
ĕquus, *m.*	*a horse.*
fīlĭus, *m.*	*a son.*
flŭvĭus, *m.*	*a river.*
glădĭus, *m.*	*a sword.*
hortus, *m.*	*a garden.*
ĭnĭmīcus, *m.*	*an enemy.*
Rhēnus, *m.*	*the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, *m.*	*the Rhone.*
rīpa, *f.*	*a bank.*
servus, *m.*	*a slave.*
taurus, *m.*	*a bull.*

Vocabulary 4.

ăger, *m.*	*a field, land.*
gĕner, *m.*	*a son-in-law.*
lĭber, *m.*	*a book.*
măgister, *m.*	*a master, teacher.*
mĭnister, *m.*	*a servant.*
pŭer, *m.*	*a boy.*
sŏcer, *m.*	*a father-in-law.*

Note. Mĭnister, lĭber, ăger are declined like măgister. Sŏcer, gĕner are declined like pŭer.

Vocabulary 5.

argentum, *n.*	*silver.*
aurum, *n.*	*gold.*
bellum, *n.*	*war.*
coelum, *n.*	*heaven.*
dīlĭgentĭa, *f.*	*diligence.*
dōnum, *n.*	*a gift.*
gaudĭum, *n.*	*joy.*
mĕtallum, *n.*	*a metal.*
oppĭdum, *n.*	*a town.*

praemĭum, *n.*	*a reward.*
regnum, *n.*	*a kingdom.*
scūtum, *n.*	*a shield.*
templum, *n.*	*a temple.*
*Dĕus, *m.*	*a god.*
discĭpŭlus, *m.*	*a pupil, scholar.*
morbus, *m.*	*a disease.*
mūrus, *m.*	*a wall.*
Rōmānus, *m.*	*a Roman.*
terra, *f.*	*the earth, land.*

* Vocative Singular same as Nom.: Dĕus: see p. 22.

Vocabulary 6.

ăcūtus, a, um,	*sharp.*
albus, a, um,	*white.*
altus, a, um,	*high, deep.*
bellĭcōsus, a, um,	*warlike.*
bŏnus, a, um,	*good.*
grātus, a, um,	*pleasing.*
lātus, a, um,	*wide, broad.*
longus, a, um,	*long.*
magnus, a, um,	*great.*
mălus, a, um,	*bad, wicked.*
mŏlestus, a, um,	*troublesome.*
multus, a, um,	*much, many.*
noxĭus, a, um,	*hurtful, injurious.*
parvus, a, um,	*small, little.*
răpĭdus, a, um,	*rapid.*
splendĭdus, a, um,	*splendid, bright.*
tĭmĭdus, a, um,	*timid.*
aeger, gra, grum	*sick.*
mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum,	*wretched.*
nĭger, gra, grum,	*black.*
pulcher, cra, crum,	*beautiful.*
săcer, cra, crum,	*sacred.*
tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum,	*tender.*
exemplum, *n.*	*an example.*
hasta, *f.*	*a spear.*
nŭmĕrus, *m.*	*a number.*
pĕrīcŭlum, *n.*	*danger.*

Note. Grātus, mŏlestus, noxĭus are followed by the Dative case.

Vocabulary 7.

hiems, hiĕmis, *f.*	*winter.*
trabs, trăbis, *f.*	*a beam.*
urbs, urbis, *f.*	*a city.*
arx, arcis, *f.*	*a citadel.*
dux, dŭcis, *c.*	*a leader, general.*
pax, pācis, *f.*	*peace.*
jūdex, jūdĭcis, *m.*	*a judge.*
lex, lēgis, *f.*	*a law.*
rex, rēgis, *m.*	*a king.*
bĕnignus, a, um,	*kind.*
firmus, a, um,	*strong.*
jūcundus, a, um,	*pleasant.*
justus, a, um,	*just.*
Rōmŭlus, *m.*	*Romulus.*
sĕvērus, a, um,	*severe.*

Vocabulary 8.

cŏmes, cŏmĭtis, *c.*	*a companion.*
custos, custōdis, *c.*	*a guardian.*
ĕques, ĕquĭtis, *m.*	*a horse-soldier.*
lăpis, lăpĭdis, *m.*	*a stone.*
mīles, mīlĭtis, *m.*	*a soldier.*
mors, mortis, *f.*	*death.*
obses, obsĭdis, *c.*	*a hostage.*
pĕdes, pĕdĭtis, *m.*	*a foot-soldier.*
aestas, tātis, *f.*	*a summer.*
cīvĭtas, tātis, *f.*	*a state, citizenship.*
tempestas, tātis, *f.*	*a tempest.*
vŏluntas, tātis, *f.*	*a wish, will.*
nox, noctis, *f.*	*night.*
auctumnus, i, *m.*	*autumn.*
nātūra, ae, *f.*	*nature.*
clārus, a, um,	*clear, renowned*

Vocabulary 9.

frāter, tris, *m.*	*a brother.*
māter, tris, *f.*	*a mother.*
păter, tris, *m.*	*a father.*
agger, ĕris, *m.*	*a mound.*
călor, ōris, *m.*	*heat.*
clāmor, ōris, *m.*	*a shout.*
cŏlor, ōris, *m.*	*colour.*
lăbor, ōris, *m.*	*labour, hardship*
ŏdor, ōris, *m.*	*a smell, scent.*
sŏror, ōris, *f.*	*a sister.*
victor, ōris, *m.*	*a conqueror.*
flōs, ōris, *m.*	*a flower.*
sōl, sōlis, *m.*	*the sun.*
castra, ōrum, *n.pl.*	*a camp.*
tōtus, a, um,	*whole.*
fossa, ae, *f.*	*a ditch.*
mūnīmentum, i, *n.*	*a fortification.*
praeda, ae, *f.*	*booty.*
vărĭus, a, um,	*different, various.*

Vocabulary 10.

lĕo, ōnis, *m.*	*a lion.*
Jūno, ōnis, *f.*	*Juno.*
pāvo, ōnis, *m.*	*a peacock.*
sermo, ōnis, *m.*	*a discourse.*
consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*habit.*
hŏmo, ĭnis, *c.*	*a man, a woman.*
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*a multitude.*
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*a maiden.*
ōrātor, ōris, *m.*	*an orator.*
*alter, ĕra, ĕrum,	*second.*
certus, a, um,	*certain.*
dĕa, ae, *f.*	*a goddess.*
doctus, a, um,	*learned.*
infīnītus, a, um,	*unbounded, infinite.*
Mĭnerva, ae, *f.*	*Minerva.*
vălĭdus, a, um,	*strong.*

* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is altĕrīus, Dat. altĕrī.

Vocabulary 11.

cīvis, is, *c.*	*a citizen.*
classis, is, *f.*	*a fleet.*
hostis, is, *c.*	*an enemy (public enemy).*
turris, is, *f.*	*a tower.*
vallis, is, *f.*	*a valley.*
vestis, is, *f.*	*a garment.*
clādes, is, *f.*	*slaughter.*
nūbes, is, *f.*	*a cloud.*
rūpes, is, *f.*	*a rock.*
angustus, a, um,	*narrow.*
āter, atra, atrum,	*black.*
dūrus, a, um,	*hard.*
nix, nĭvis, *f.*	*snow.*
nōtus, a, um,	*known.*
pĕrītus, a, um,	*skilful.*
Rōmānus, a, um,	*Roman.*

Vocabulary 12.

grāmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*grass.*
nōmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*a name.*
gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*	*a race, a class.*
ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*	*a work.*
sīdus, ĕris, *n.*	*a star, constellation.*
scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*	*a crime.*
dĕcus, ŏris, *n.*	*an ornament.*
corpus, ŏris, *n.*	*a body.*
frīgus, ŏris, *n.*	*cold.*
lītus, ŏris, *n.*	*a shore.*
tempus, ŏris, *n.*	*time.*
căput, ĭtis, *n.*	*a head.*
crūs, crūris, *n.*	*a leg.*
fulgur, ŭris, *n.*	*lightning.*
ōs, ōris, *n.*	*a mouth.*
rēte, is, *n.*	*a net.*
măre, is, *n.*	*the sea.*
ănĭmăl, ālis, *n.*	*an animal.*
calcăr, āris, *n.*	*a spur.*
vectīgăl, ālis, *n.*	*a tax.*
annus, i, *m.*	*a year.*
antīquus, a, um,	*ancient.*
aurĕus, a, um,	*golden.*
bălaena, ae, *f.*	*a whale.*
Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.*	*Carthage* (a city of Africa).
Cĭcĕro, ōnis, *m.*	*Cicero* (a celebrated Roman orator).
dŏmĭcĭlĭum, ii, *n.*	*abode.*
ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*	*an elephant.*
īra, ae, *f.*	*anger.*
nŏvus, a, um,	*new.*
ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*	*an eye.*
piscis, is, *m.*	*a fish.*
prŏfundus, a, um,	*deep.*

Vocabulary 13.

ācer, cris, cre,	*keen, sharp.*
cĕler, ĕris, ĕre,	*swift.*
brĕvis, e,	*short.*
dulcis, e,	*sweet.*
diffĭcĭlis, e,	*difficult.*
făcĭlis, e,	*easy.*
fĭdēlis, e,	*faithful.*
lĕvis, e,	*light.*
omnis, e,	*all, every.*
ūtĭlis, e,	*useful.*
audax, ācis,	*bold.*
răpax, ācis,	*rapacious.*
fēlix, īcis,	*fortunate, successful.*
vēlox, ōcis,	*swift.*
ingens, entis,	*immense.*
praesens, entis,	*present.*
praestans, antis,	*excellent.*
pŏtens, entis,	*powerful.*
prūdens, entis,	*prudent.*
arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*arms.*
carmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*a song.*

consĭlĭum, ii, *n.*	*plan, counsel.*
fŭror, ōris, *m.*	*madness.*
hūmānus, a, um,	*human.*
ĭnĭtĭum, ii, *n.*	*a beginning.*
nāvis, is, *f.*	*a ship.*
Persa, ae, *m.*	*a Persian.*
săgitta, ae, *f.*	*an arrow.*
vĭa, ae, *f.*	*a way, a road.*
vĕtus, vĕtĕris,	*old.*
vīnum, i, *n.*	*wine.*
vulnus, ĕris, *n.*	*a wound.*

Vocabulary 14.

ăcus, ūs, *f.*	*a needle.*
arcus, ūs, *m.*	*a bow.*
audītus, ūs, *m.*	*hearing.*
cursus, ūs, *m.*	*running.*
ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*	*cavalry.*
exercĭtus, ūs, *m.*	*an army.*
fīcus, ūs, *f.*	*a fig.*
fructus, ūs, *m.*	*fruit.*
măgistrātus, ūs, *m.*	*a magistrate.*
mănus, ūs, *f.*	*a hand.*
pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.*	*infantry.*
portus, ūs, *m.*	*a harbour.*
quercus, ūs, *f.*	*an oak.*
sensus, us, *m.*	*a sense.*
vīsus, ūs, *m.*	*seeing.*
cornu, ūs, *n.*	*a horn.*
gĕnu, ūs, *n.*	*a knee.*
aurĭs, is, *f.*	*an ear.*
cervus, i, *m.*	*a stag.*
coelestis, e,	*belonging to the heavens:* hence
arcus coelestis,	*the rainbow.*
instrūmentum, i, *n.*	*an instrument.*
magnĭfĭcus, a, um,	*magnificent.*
tūtus, a, um,	*safe.*
Scȳtha, ae, *m.*	*a Scythian.*
Scȳthae, ārum, *m. pl.*	*the Scythians.*
sēdes, is, *f.*	*a seat.*
vŏluptas, tātis, *f.*	*pleasure.*

Vocabulary 15.

ăcĭes, ēi, *f.*	*a line of battle.*
dĭes, ēi, *m.* & *f.*	*a day.*
făcĭes, ēi, *f.*	*a countenance.*
fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*	*faith, fidelity.*
plānĭtĭes, ēi, *f.*	*a plain.*
rēs, ĕi, *f.*	*a thing.*
segnĭtĭes, ēi, *f.*	*slothfulness, indolence.*
spes, ĕi, *f.*	*hope.*
crĕātor, ōris, *m.*	*a creator.*
dŏmĭna, ae, *f.*	*a mistress.*
fortūna, ae, *f.*	*a fortune.*
rārus, a, um,	*rare.*
sĕrēnus, a, um,	*clear.*
victōrĭa, ae, *f.*	*a victory.*

Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ŏris, *f.*	*a tree.*
bestĭa, ae, *f.*	*a beast.*
cănis, is, *c.*	*a dog.*
conscĭentĭa, ae,	*conscience.*
dēbĭlis, e,	*feeble.*
dīvĭtĭae, ārum, *f.* (only pl.)	*riches.*
flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*a current, rive[r]*
fortis, e,	*strong, brave.*
fulmen, ĭnis, *n.*	*lightning, a thunderbolt.*
fūnus, ĕris, *n.*	*a funeral.*
immortālis, e,	*immortal.*
jŭvĕnis, is, *c.*	*a young man [or] woman.*
mŏnŭmentum, i, *n.*	*a monument.*
mortālis, e,	*mortal.*
Neptūnus, i, *m.*	*Neptune.*
paucus, a, um,	*few.*
plēnus, a, um, (with *gen.*)	*full.*
silva, ae, *f.*	*a wood.*

Vocabulary 17.

culpa, ae, *f.*	*blame, fault.*
Graecus, a, um,	*Grecian, Gree[k]*
hŏnor, ōris, *m.*	*an honour.*
indoctus, a, um,	*unlearned.*
ĭnĭmīcus, a, um,	*unfriendly.*
laus, laudis, *f.*	*praise.*
mĕmŏrābĭlis, e,	*to be remembered, memoable.*
vērus, a, um,	*true.*
virtūs, ūtis, *f.*	*valour, virtue.*

Vocabulary 18.

ădūlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*	*flattery.*
ămābĭlis, e,	*lovely.*
ămor, ōris, *m.*	*love.*

asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *rough, rugged.*
Căto, ōnis, *m.* *Cato, a noble Roman.*
ferrum, i, *n.* *iron.*
Helvētĭa, ae, *f.* *the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).*
hībernus, a, um, *wintry, of winter.*
ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f.* *a likeness, portrait, image.*
imprŏbus, a, um, *dishonest, wicked.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.* *a journey.*
lĕpus, ŏris, *m.* *a hare.*
lūna, ae, *f.* *the moon.*
lux, lūcis, *f.* *light.*
*mĕus, a, um, *my, mine.*
mons, montis, *m.* *a mountain.*
nĭhĭl, *indec. n.* *nothing.*
nōn, *adv.* *not.*
ŏdĭum, ii, *n.* *hatred.*
pernĭcĭōsus, a, um, *destructive.*
quam, *adv. & conj.* *than, as.*
rādix, īcis, *f.* *a root.*
săpĭentĭa, ae, *f.* *wisdom.*
semper, *adv.* *always, ever.*
sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.* *a pretence.*
sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.* *a sound.*
spērātus, a, um, *hoped for.*
suāvis, e, *sweet, delightful.*
sŭus, a, um, *his, hers, its, their own.*
tĕnŭis, e, *slender.*
tranquillus, a, um, *calm.*
tŭus, a, um, *thy, thine.*
vēr, vēris, *n.* *the spring.*
vultur, ŭris, *m.* *a vulture.*

* The Vocative Sing. Masc. of *meus* is *mi.*

Vocabulary 19.

Ălexander, dri, *m.* *Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.*
†Augustus, i, *m.* *Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.*
centŭrĭa, ae, *f.* *a century*
cĕrăsus, i, *f.* *a cherry-tree.*
cĕrăsum, i, *n.* *a cherry.*
cŏhors, rtis, *f.* *a cohort.*
consul, ŭlis, *m.* *a consul.*
injustus, a, um, *unjust.*
lĕgĭo, ōnis, *f.* *a legion.*
Măcĕdo, ŏnis, *m.* *a Macedonian.*
mālus, i, *f.* *an apple-tree.*
mālum, i, *n.* *an apple.*
mănĭpŭlus, i, *m.* *a maniple.*
mensis, is, *m.* *a month.*
mītis, e, *mild.*
ŏs, ossis, *n.* *a bone.*
pars, partis, *f.* *a part.*
pĭrus, i, *f.* *a pear-tree.*
pĭrum, i, *n.* *a pear.*
prūnus, i, *f.* *a plum-tree.*
prūnum, i, *n.* *a plum.*
săpĭens, ntis, *adj. and subs.* *wise, a wise-man.*
Xerxēs, ĭs, *m.* *Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.*

† The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um, *attentive.*
bĕātus, a, um, *happy.*
cārus, a, um, *dear.*
contentus, a, um, *contented.*
dīlĭgens, ntis, *diligent, careful.*
dīves, ĭtis, *rich.*
ignāvĭa, ae, *f.* *cowardice.*
jūs, juris, *n.* *right, law.*
laetus, a, um, *joyful.*
līber, ĕra, ĕrum, *free.*
mĕmor, ŏris, *mindful.*
noster, tra, trum, *our, ours.*
nunc, *adv.* *now.*
pauper, ĕris, *poor.*
praeceptor, ōris, *m.* *a teacher.*
prŏbus, a, um, *good, upright.*
sălus, ūtis, *f.* *safety.*
sors, rtis, *f.* *a lot.*
Tĭtus, i (T.), *m.* *Titus, a common Roman forename.*
tristis, e, *sad.*
vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*
sī, *conj.* *if.*

Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

ănĭmus, i, *m.* *mind, the soul courage, temper, the feelings.*

auctōrĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*authority.*
*autem, *conj.*	*but.*
auxĭlĭum, ii, *n.*	*help, aid.*
cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*desire, passion.*
Dēmosthĕnēs, is, *m.*	*Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.*
industrĭus, a, um,	*industrious, busy.*
ĭners, rtis,	*helpless, sluggish.*
lĭbĕri, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*children.*
mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f.*	*memory.*
părens, entis, *c.*	*a parent.*
planta, ae, *f.*	*a sprout, plant.*
proelĭum, ii, *n.*	*a battle.*

* The proper position of *autem* is *after* the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

Vocabulary 24.

addictus, a, um,	*devoted.*
aeternus, a, um,	*eternal.*
bellua, ae, *f.*	*a great beast.*
Cimbri, ōrum, *m.*	*the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.*
cŏr, cordis, *n.*	*a heart.*
ēlĕgans, ntis,	*elegant, exquisite.*
fĭdēlis, e, } fīdus, a, um, }	*faithful.*
fons, ntis, *m.*	*a fountain.*
*Līvĭus, ii, *m.*	*Livy, a Roman historian.*
luscĭnĭa, ae, *f.*	*a nightingale.*
mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.*	*a woman, wife.*
*Sallustĭus, ii, *m.*	*Sallust, a Roman historian.*
salvus, a, um,	*safe.*
sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*	*blood.*
scriptor, ōris, *m.*	*a writer, author.*

* Proper Names ending in *ius* make *i* in the Vocative: *e.g.* Voc. *Livi, Sallusti.* So also *filius* makes Voc. *fili*, and *gĕnius, a guardian deity, gĕni.*

Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I build.*
ambŭlo, āvi, ātum,	*I walk.*
castīgo, āvi, ātum,	*I chastise.*
crĕo, āvi, ātum,	*I create, make.*
cūro, āvi, ātum,	*I take care, pains.*
do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre,	*I give.*
ēmendo, āvi, ātum,	*I improve.*
ēmigro, āvi, ātum,	*I depart from.*
expugno, āvi, ātum,	*I take by storm.*
firmo, āvi, ātum,	*I strengthen.*
flo, āvi, ātum,	*I blow.*
hăbĭto, āvi, ātum,	*I dwell.*
intro, āvi, ātum,	*I enter.*
jūdĭco, āvi, ātum,	*I judge.*
laudo, āvi, ātum,	*I praise.*
mūto, āvi, ātum,	*I change.*
oppugno, āvi, ātum,	*I attack, assault.*
orno, āvi, ātum,	*I adorn.*
păro, āvi, ātum,	*I prepare, get, gain.*
pugno, āvi, ātum,	*I fight.*
rĕcrĕo, āvi, ātum,	*I refresh.*
vasto, āvi, ātum,	*I lay waste.*
vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum,	*I watch, I am awake.*
vĭtŭpĕro, āvi, ātum,	*I blame, find fault with.*

---

aedĭfĭcĭum, ii, *n.*	*a building.*
Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*	*Corinth.*
dĭlĭgenter, *adv.*	*carefully.*
dum, *conj.*	*while.*
fraus, fraudis, *f.*	*dishonesty.*
jam, *adv.*	*now, already.*
lībertas, tātis, *f.*	*freedom, liberty.*
lĭtĕra, ae, *f.*	*a letter of the alphabet.*
lĭtĕrae, arum, *f.*	*letters, learning; also, an epistle, letter.*
mōs, mōris, *m.*	*a manner, custom.*
nēmo, ĭnis, *c.*	*nobody.*
ŏpŭlentus, a, um,	*wealthy.*
plăcĭdus, a, um,	*quiet.*
prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*honesty, integrity.*
quum, *adv.* & *conj.*	*when.*
somnus, i, *m.*	*sleep.*
tĭmor, ōris, *m.*	*fear.*
vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*health.*
ventus, i, *m.*	*wind.*

(D, E, F.)

advento, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I am on the point of arriving.*
canto, āvi, ātum,	*I sing.*

dēlecto, āvi, ātum, *I delight, amuse.*
dīmĭco, āvi, ātum, *I fight (a battle).*
dŭbĭto, āvi, ātum, *I doubt.*
erro, āvi, ātum, *I err, make a mistake.*
exhĭlăro, āvi, ātum, *I cheer.*
impĕro, āvi, ātum, (with *dat.*) *I command.*
lībĕro, āvi, ātum, *I free, deliver.*
occŭpo, āvi, ātum, *I seize upon.*
opto, āvi, ātum, *I wish, desire.*
porto, āvi, ātum, *I carry.*
rĕdămo, āvi, ātum, *I love in return.*
rĕnŏvo, āvi, ātum, *I make new again, restore.*
servo, āvi, ātum, *I preserve, save.*
sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, *I overcome.*
tracto, āvi, ātum, *I handle, deal with.*

ăb (ā, abs), *prep.* (with *abl.*) *from, by.*
dŭbĭus, a, um, *doubtful.*
fortĭter, *adv.* *bravely.*
fortissĭmē, *adv.* *very bravely.*
Hannĭbal, ălis, *m.* *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*
hĕrī, *adv.* *yesterday.*
intĕrĭtus, ūs, *m.* *destruction.*
ĭtă, *adv.* (*from* is, id) *in that way, thus.*
mājōres, um, *m.pl.* *ancestors.*
rectus, a, um, *straight, right.*
saepĕ, *adv.* *often.*
stătio, ōnis, *f.* *a post, station.*
terror, ōris, *m.* *terror, alarm.*

Vocabulary 26.

coercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I restrain, curb.*
dēbeo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I owe, ought.*
dēlĕo, ēvi, ētum, 2. *I destroy.*
displĭcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. (with *dat.*) * *I displease.*
dŏcĕo, docŭi, doctum, 2. *I teach.*
exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I exercise.*
flĕo, flēvi, flētum, 2. *I weep.*
flōrĕo, ŭi, 2. *I bloom, flourish.*
*gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, 2. *I rejoice.*

* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-passives. (See p. 85.)

hăbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I have.*
mĕrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I deserve.*
mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I advise, warn.*
nŏcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. (with *dat.*) *I hurt, harm.*
pārĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. (with *dat.*) *I obey.*
plăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. (with *dat.*) *I please.*
praebĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I furnish, afford, exhibit.*
terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I terrify, frighten, alarm.*
vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I am strong, in good health.*

ars, artis, *f.* *art, handicraft.*
ăvis, is, *f.* *a bird.*
Athēnĭensis, e, *Athenian.*
bĕnĕ, *adv.* *well.*
Caesar, ăris, *m.* *Caesar, a famous Roman.*
cantus, ūs, *m.* *a song.*
dĭū, *adv.* *a long time.*
dīvīnus, a, um, *belonging to the gods, divine.*
Lătīnus, a, um, *Latin.*
lingua, ae, *f.* *tongue, language.*
praeceptum, i, *n.* *precept, instruction, lesson.*
Pompēius, ēii, *m.* *Pompey, the rival of Caesar.*
quĭă, quŏd, *conjs.* *because.*
saepissĭmē, *adv.* *very often.*
sĕnectūs, ūtis, *f.* *old age.*
Sŏlon, ōnis, *m.* *Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.*
tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.* *recklessness, rashness.*

Vocabulary 27.

absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. *I consume, cut off.*
cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3. *I surround.*
contemno, tempsi, temptum, 3. *I despise.*
contrăho, traxi, tractum, 3. *I draw together.*

convŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I fly or rush together.*
corrĭgo, rexi, rectum, 3. *I correct.*
dēfendo, di, sum, 3. *I defend.*
dēsĕro, rŭi, rtum, 3. *I abandon.*
dētĕgo, xi, ctum, 3. *I discover.*
dīco, xi, ctum, 3. *I say, speak.*
disco, dĭdĭci, —, 3. *I learn.*
dūco, xi, ctum, 3. *I lead.*
ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3. *I buy.*
excŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3. *I cultivate carefully.*
instĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. *I appoint, institute.*
instrŭo, xi, ctum, 3. *I arrange, draw up in order.*
*jungo, junxi, junctum, 3. *I join.*
lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3. *I gather, read.*
narro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I relate.*
pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3. *I paint, embroider.*
rĕgo, rexi, rectum, 3. *I rule.*
scrībo, psi, ptum, 3. *I write.*
solvo, vi, ūtum, 3. *I loosen, pay.*
specto, āvi, ātum, 1. *I look at, look on.*
tĕgo, texi, tectum, 3. *I cover.*
trăho, traxi, tractum, 3. *I draw, drag.*
*triumpho, āvi, ātum, 1. *I triumph.*
vŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I fly.*
Cămillus, i, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*
Cătĭlīna, ae, *m.* *Catiline, a conspirator.*
conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.* *a conspiracy.*
cōpĭa, ae, *f.* *plenty.*
cōpĭae, ārum, *f. pl.* *forces.*
currus, ūs, *m.* *a chariot.*
fĕrē, *adv.* *almost, commonly.*
Hellespontus, i, *m.* *the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).*

* A triumph (*triumphus*) was *a grand procession of a Roman general through the streets of Rome.*

impĕrātor, ōris, *m.* *a military commander, a general.*
ĭn, *prep.* (with *acc.*) *into.*
incendĭum, ii, *n.* *a fire, conflagration.*
innŭmĕrus, a, um, *innumerable.*
lŏcus, ī, *m.*, *pl.* -i, *m.*, and -a, *n.* *a place.*
mens, mentis, *f.* *the mind.*
mundus, i, *m.* *the world.*
obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f.* *a siege, blockade.*
ōrātĭo, ōnis, *f.* *oration, speech.*
pallĭum, ii, *n.* *a cloak.*
*pons, ntis, *m.* *a bridge.*
sĭmŭl ac (atque), or in one word, sĭmŭlac, *conj.* *as soon as.*
vix, *adv.* *scarcely.*

* Observe the phrase *jungĕre flūmen ponte, to throw a bridge over a river.*

Vocabulary 28.

custōdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I guard, keep guard.*
dormĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I sleep.*
ērŭdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I train up, educate.*
fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I limit, put an end to.*
mollĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I soften, assuage.*
mūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I fortify.*
nescĭo, īvi & ĭi, ītum, 4. *I am ignorant of.*
nūtrĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I nourish, nurture.*
ŏbēdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. (with *dat.*) *I obey.*
pūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I punish.*
rĕpĕrĭo, pĕri, pertum, 4. *I find.*
scĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I know.*
sĕpĕlĭo, īvi and ĭi, pultum, 4. *I bury.*
vĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4. *I come.*
vestĭo, īvi, ītum, 4. *I clothe.*
vincĭo, vinxi, vinctum, 4. *I bind.*

Alpēs, ĭum, *m. pl.* *the Alps.*

Cornēlĭa, ae, *f.*	*Cornelia, a Roman matron.*
crūdēlis, e,	*cruel.*
dīlĭgentissĭmē, *adv.*	*most carefully.*
dŏlor, ōris, *m.*	*pain, grief.*
ĕtĭam, *conj.*	*also, even.*
fīnis, is, *m.*	*end, limit,* in pl. *territories.*
gnāvĭtĕr, *adv.*	*actively, vigorously.*
Lĭbўa, ae, *f.*	*Africa.*
lictor, ōris, *m.*	*a lictor (attendant on a magistrate).*
longinquus, a, um,	*long, distant.*
longinquĭtas, ātis, *f.*	*length, distance.*
membrāna, ae, *f.*	*thin skin, membrane.*
mollis, e,	*soft, mellow.*
mortŭus, a, um,	*dead.*
ōlim, *adv.*	*formerly, once upon a time.*
quŏquĕ, *conj.*	*also, even.*
tĕnŭis, e,	*thin, delicate.*
turpis, e,	*base, disgraceful.*
vestīmentum, i, *n.*	*clothing.*
vincŭlum, i, *n.*	*a chain, bond.*
vox, vōcis, *f.*	*a voice.*

Vocabulary 29.

ēdŭco, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I educate.*
ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.	*I lead out.*
fŭgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I put to flight.*
vulnĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I wound.*

Antĭŏchus, i, *m.*	*Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria.*
ēgrĕgĭus, a, um,	*excellent, eminent.*
grăvĭtĕr, *adv.*	*heavily, severely, grievously.*
Lўcurgus, i, *m.*	*Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.*
Trōja, ae, *f.*	*Troy, the city.*
Vesta, ae, *f.*	*Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth.*

Vocabulary 30.

mănĕo, mansi, mansum, 2.	*I remain.*
mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.	*I move, disturb.*
tĭmeo, ŭi, —, 2.	*I fear.*

---

adventus, ūs, *m.*	*arrival.*
Nĕro, ōnis, *m.*	*Nero, a Roman emperor.*
strēnŭus, a, um,	*vigorous.*
strēnŭē, *adv.*	*vigorously.*
stŭdĭum, ii, *n.*	*zeal, pursuit, study.*
sŭbĭtus, a, um,	*sudden.*

Vocabulary 31.

afflīgo, xi, ctum, 3.	*I cast down, prostrate.*
cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3.	*I cultivate, cherish, &c.*
dīlĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3.	*I esteem, love.*
fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.	*I frame, feign, invent.*
stŭdĕo, ŭi, —, 2.	*I am eager, zealous.*
vĕho, vexi, vectum, 3.	*I carry,* in Pass. *I ride.*
vinco, vīci, victum, 3.	*I conquer.*
vīvo, vixi, victum, 3.	*I live.*

---

clādes, is, *f.*	*disaster, defeat.*
făbŭla, ae, *f.*	*a fable, story.*
nōbĭlis, e,	*disti*
perversus, a, um,	*wilful, perverse.*
Phăĕthon, ontis, *m.*	*Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.*
prŏbē, *adv.*	*rightly, properly.*
quĭdem, *adv.*	*indeed.*
rătĭo, ōnis, *f.*	*reason.*
Scīpĭo, ōnis, *m.*	*Scipio, a noble Roman.*
vĕhĕmentĕr, *adv.*	*vehemently, warmly.*

Vocabulary 32.

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3.	*I fall.*

āër, āĕris, *m.*	*the air.*
Afrĭcānus, i, *m.*	*Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.*
cognĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.*	*inquiry, knowledge.*
ērŭdītus, a, um,	*trained, educated.*
Gracchus, i, *m.*	*Gracchus, a noble Roman.*
ĭnjustē, *adv.*	*unjustly.*
justē, *adv.*	*justly.*
lăpĭdĕus, a, um,	*of stone.*
nĕgōtĭum, ii, *n.*	*business.*
pellis, is, *f.*	*skin* (of an animal).
prĭus, *adv.*	*sooner, before.*
Pūnĭcus, a, um,	*Punic, Carthaginian.*
Sōcrătēs, is, *m.*	*Socrates, the sage of Athens.*
sōlum, *adv.*	*only.*
summus, a, um,	*highest, utmost, greatest.*
Tĭbĕrĭus, ii, *m.* (Ti.)	*Tiberius, a common Roman fore-name.*

Vocabulary 33.

absurdus, a, um,	*absurd.*
bŏna, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*goods.*
celsus, a, um,	*lofty, tall.*
margărīta, ae, *f.*	*a pearl.*
nĕcessārĭus, a, um,	*necessary, needful.*
nīdus, i, *m.*	*a nest.*
versus, ūs, *m.*	*a line, a verse*

Vocabulary 34.

admīror, ātus, 1.	*I wonder at, I admire.*
aspernor, ātus, 1.	*I reject, despise.*
cōnor, ātus, 1.	*I attempt.*
contemplor, ātus, 1.	*I observe carefully, contemplate.*
hortor, ātus, 1.	*I urge, exhort, encourage.*
mĕdĭtor, ātus, 1.	*I meditate on, study.*
mīror, ātus, 1.	*I wonder at, admire.*
vĕnĕror, ātus, 1.	*I reverence, worship.*

---

dēmum, *adv.*	*indeed.**
pŏtestas, ātis, *f.*	*power.*†
pŏtentĭa, ae, *f.*	*power.*†
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *or* quiddam,	*a certain, certain one.*
tum, *adv.*	*then.*

* As, tum demum, *then indeed; then and not till then.*

† *Potestas* is the regular power of a magistrate; *Potentia*, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

Vocabulary 35.

*accĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.	*I receive.*
*confĭtĕor, fessus, 2.	*I confess.*
*dēcĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.	*I deceive.*
*ējĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3.	*I cast forth.*
fătĕor, fassus, 2.	*I confess.*
ĭmĭtor, ātus, 1.	*I imitate.*
intŭĕor, ĭtus, 2.	*I look upon, into.*
mĭsĕrĕor, ĭtus *or* rtus, 2.	*I pity, have pity on.*
pollĭcĕor, ĭtus, 2.	*I promise.*
rĕcordor, ātus, 1.	*I call to mind.*
tŭĕor, ĭtus, 2.	*I gaze, guard, protect.*
vĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2.	*I fear, reverence.*

* Observe the change of ă to ĭ when a preposition is prefixed in composition, as, accĭpĭo = ad + căpio; confĭtĕor = con + făteor, etc.

Āsĭa, ae, *f.*	*Asia.*
Dārīus, ii, *m.*	*Darius, a king of Persia.*
ex, ē, *prep.* (with *abl.*)	*out of.*
făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*	*bold or daring deed, crime.*
Plīnĭus, ii, *m.*	*Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.*

praetĕrĭtus, a, um, *past.*
rĕus, i, *m.* — *an accused man, defendant.*

Vocabulary 36.

ăbūtor, ūsus, 3. — *I abuse.*
ădhortor, ātus, 1. — *I urge, exhort.*
ădĭpiscor, ădeptus, 3. — *I acquire, attain to, obtain.*
allŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3. — *I speak to.*
committo, mīsi, missum, 3. — *I send together, join (fight) battle.*
dēflāgro, āvi, ātum, 1. — *to be burnt down.*
fruor, fruĭtus *and* fructus, 3. — *I enjoy.*
fungor, functus, 3. — *I discharge.*
gĕro, gessi, gĕstum, 3. — *I carry on (war), wage (war).*
incūso, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I accuse, find fault with.*
jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, 2. — *I order, bid.*
lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3. — *I speak.*
mŏrĭor, mortŭus (*fut. part.* mŏrĭtūrus, *about to die*), 3. — *I die.*
nascor, nātus, 3. — *I am born.*
oblīviscor, lītus, 3. — *I forget.*
pătĭor, passus, 3. — *I endure, suffer.*
prŏfĭciscor, fectus, 3. — *I set out.*
rĕmĭniscor, 3. — *I remember.*
sĕquor, cūtus, 3. — *I follow.*
ūtor, ūsus, 3. — *I use.*
vescor, —, 3. — *I feed, live on.*

ăd, *prep.* (with *acc.*) — *to, at, near.*
ălĭquando, *adv.* — *sometimes.*
ăpŭd, *prep.* (with *acc.*) — *at, near.*
bĕnignē, *adv.* — *kindly.*
căro, carnis, *f.* — *flesh.*
cāsĕus, i, *m.* — *cheese.*
consŭlātus, ūs, *m.* — *office of consul, consulate.*
crŭcĭātus, ūs, *m.* — *torture.*
Dĭāna, ae, *f.* — *Diana.*
Eurīpĭdes, is, *m.* — *Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.*
immortālĭtas, ātis, *f.* — *immortality.*
Lăbĭēnus, i, *m.* — *Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
lac, lactis, *n.* — *milk.*
lăcus, ūs, *m.* — *a lake.*
laetĭtĭa, ae, *f.* — *joy.*
Mĕnăpĭi, ōrum, *m.* — *Menapii, a Gallic tribe.*
mox, *adv.* — *soon, shortly.*
mūnus, ĕris, *n.* — *a gift, duty, function.*
nēvĕ, *conj.* (with *subj.*) — *nor, and lest.*
nĭmĭs, *adv.* — *too, too much.*
pĕr, *prep.* (with *acc.*) — *through.*
poena, ae, *f.* — *punishment.*
Poeni, ōrum, *m.* — *the Carthaginians.*
pristĭnus, a, um, — *former, olden.*
rārō, *adv.* — *seldom.*
Rēgŭlus, i, *m.* — *Regulus, a famous Roman.*
Sălămis, īnis, *f.* — *Salamis, an island near Athens.*
tantum, *adv.* — *only.*
Trăsĭmēnus, i, *m.* — *Lake Trasimene, in Italy.*

Vocabulary 37.

blandĭor, ītus (with *dat.*), 4. — *I flatter, win upon.*
expĕrĭor, rtus, 4. — *I try, experience.*
mētĭor, mensus, 4. — *I measure.*
mentĭor, ītus, 4. — *I lie, tell a lie.*
ordĭor, orsus, 4. — *I begin.*
partĭor, ītus, 4. — *I share, divide.*
pŏtĭor, ītus, 4. (with *abl.*) — *I obtain possession of.*

---

cīvīlis, e, *adj.* — *belonging to a citizen; civil.*
Ĕpămīnondas, ae, *m.* — *Epaminondas, a famous Theban.*

frons, frontis, *f.*	*the forehead, brow.*
nunquam, *adv.*	*never.*
vultus, ūs, *m.*	*a countenance, looks.*

Vocabulary 38.

flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, 3.	*I flow.*
migro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I migrate, depart.*

---

mĕtus, ūs, *m.*	*fear.*
occĭdens, ntis, *m.*	*the west (the setting sun).*
permulti, ae, a,	*very many.*
prīmo, *adv.*	*at first.*
prīmum, *adv.*	*first, in the first place.*

Vocabulary 39.

dīvĭdo, vīsi, vīsum, 3.	*I divide, separate.*
mitto, mīsi, missum, 3.	*I send.*

---

cētĕrī (caet.), cētĕrae, cētĕra, *pl.*	*the rest.*
Germāni, ōrum, *m.*	*the Germans.*
Helvĕtĭus, a, um,	*Helvetian.* (See Voc. 18.)
lēgātus, i, *m.*	*ambassador, lieutenant.*
ōcĕănus, i, *m.*	*the ocean.*

Vocabulary 40.

fulgĕo, lsi, lsum, 2.	*I shine.*
prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3. *v. irr.*	*I extend.* (See p. 80.)

Aegyptus, i, *f.*	*Egypt.*
impĕrĭum, ii, *n.*	*empire.*
Indi, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*Indians, the people of India.*
marmor, ŏris, *n.*	*marble.*
servĭtūs, ūtis, *f.*	*slavery.*
tăbernācŭlum, i, *n.*	*a tent.*
uxor, ōris, *f.*	*a wife.*

Vocabulary 41.

accēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.	*I approach.*
ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.	*I lead, act, do.*
excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.	*I depart from.*
incĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.	*I begin.*
perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.	*I destroy.*
rĕsisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3. (with *dat.*)	*I resist.*

---

atque, ac, *conj.*	*and.*
attentē, *adv.*	*attentively.*
audactĕr, *adv.*	*boldly, daringly.*
Hasdrŭbal, ălis, *m.*	*Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.*
jŭventūs, ūtis, .	*youth.*
lātē, *adv.*	*widely, wide.*
longē, *adv.*	*far.*
Roscĭus, ii, *m.*	*Roscius, a Roman name.*
sătis, *adv.*	*enough, sufficiently.*
tigris, is *or* ĭdis, *c.*	*a tiger, tigress.*

Vocabulary 42.

infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3.	*I break, impair.*
obscūro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I darken, obscure.*
rĕlinquo, līqui, lictum, 3.	*I leave, quit.*

---

aequus, a, um,	*level, even, just.*
cur, *adv.*	*why?*
impĕtus, ūs, *m.*	*an onset, attack.*
invĭdĭa, ae, *f.*	*envy, ill-will.*
splendor, ōris, *m.*	*brightness, brilliancy.*
tўrannus, i, *m.*	*a despot, tyrant.*

Vocabulary 43.

cŏmĭtor, ātus, 1.	*I accompany.*
immŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I sacrifice.*
indulgĕo, dulsi, dultum, 2. (with *dat.*)	*I indulge.*
lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, 3.	*I play.*
mĕtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.	*I fear.*

ōro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*
saltō, āvi, ātum, 1. *I dance.*
sĕdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2. *I* [illegible]
vĭdĕor, vīsus, 2. *I seem, appear.*

Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m.* *Apollo, a Roman divinity.*
hostĭa, ae, *f.* *a victim.*
nōbĭlis, e, *distinguished, noble.*
Pȳthăgŏras, ae, *m.* *Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*

Vocabulary 44.

sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3. *I plant, sow.*

---

aerumna, ae, *f.* *trouble, affliction.*
frūges, um, *f. pl.* *fruits, a crop.*
ĭnops, ŏpis, *destitute.*
ŏnus, ĕris, *n.* *a load, burden.*
pătĭentĕr, *adv.* *patiently.*
paupertas, ātis, *f.* *poverty.*
prūdentĭa, ae, *f.* *knowledge, prudence.*

Phrase:—

Auxilium ferre, *to render assistance.*

Vocabulary 45.

occīdo, cīdi, cīsum, 3. *I kill, slay.*
stătuo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. *I fix, determine.*

---

atrox, ōcis, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*
făcĭlĕ, *adv.* *easily.*
fămēs, is, *f.* *hunger.*
hĭlăris, e, *cheerful.*
ignāvē, *adv.* *indolently.*
ōrācŭlum, i, *n.* *an oracle.*
sĭlentĭum, ii, *n.* *silence.*
suprēmus, a, um, *last.*
unquam, *adv* *at any time, ever.*

Vocabulary 46.

adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, *I assist.*
nĕquĕo, quīvi and īi, ītum, nĕquīre, (like eo,) 4. *I am unable, cannot.*

---

cāsus, ūs, *m.* *chance, accident.*
infectus, a, um, *undone.*
grăvis, e, *heavy, severe.*
noxĭus, a, um, *guilty.*
sŏcĭus, ii, *m.* *a partner, ally, companion.*
Thĕmistocles, is, *m.* *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addĭdĭci, 3. *I learn in addition.*
bĭbo, bĭbi, bĭbĭtum, 3. *I drink.*
conservo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I preserve, maintain.*
curro, cŭcurri, cursum, 3. *I run.*
interfĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3. *I put to death, kill.*

ălĭquis, quĭd, *pron.* *some one, something.*
Carthāgĭniensis, e, *Carthaginian.*

nāvālis, e, *naval.*
Nīlus, i, *m.* *the river Nile.*
nonnullus, a, um, *some.*
quŏtīdĭē, *adv.* *every day.*
tam, *adv.* *so, to such a degree.*

Phrase:—

In legem jurāre, *to swear to a law.*

Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I lament over, deplore.*
īrascor, īrātus, 3, *dep.* *I am angry.*
tăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I am silent.*
trĭbŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. *I give, assign.*

Arĭŏvistus i, *m.* *Ariovistus, a German king.*

fortĕ, *adv.*	*by chance.*
infāmĭa, ae, *f.*	*infamy.*
mĭnĭmē, *adv.*	*in the least degree.*
nec, nĕquĕ, *conj.*	*neither, nor.*
stultĭtĭa, ae, *f.*	*folly.*

Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, a, um,	*all, all together.*
dissĭmĭlis, e,	*unlike.*
fĕrox, ōcis,	*fierce, spirited.*
ignōrātio, ōnis, *f.*	*ignorance.*
infĕrĭor, ĭus (*comp.*)	*lower, inferior.*
mălum, i, *n.*	*an evil.*
perfectus, a, um,	*finished, perfect.*
Phīdĭas, ae, *m.*	*Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.*
praestābĭlis, e,	*excellent.*
proxĭmus, a, um,	*nearest, next.*
scĭentĭa, ae, *f.*	*knowledge.*
sed, *conj.*	*but.*
sĭmĭlis, e,	*like.*
sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n.*	*an image, statue.*
vīlis, e,	*cheap, common.*

Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nĭtum, 3.	*I learn, ascertain.*
comprĕhendo, di, sum, 3.	*I seize.*
confĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.	*I finish, accomplish.*
conscendo, di, sum, 3.	*I mount, go on board (ship).*
contendo, di, sum *and* tum, 3.	*I strain, hasten.*
convŏco, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I call together.*
efflōresco, flōrŭi, 3.	*to blossom forth.*
expōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3.	*I put forth, disembark (troops).*
intŭmesco, tŭmŭi, 3.	*I swell.*
lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.*	*I glide, pass away, fall.*
ŏrĭor, ortus, ŏrīri, 4, *v. dep.*: see p. 122.	*I rise.*
perlĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.	*I read through.*
perrumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3.	*I burst through.*
praemitto, mīsi, missum, 3.	*I send on before.*
rĕcĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I read aloud.*
rĕcŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I recover, get back.*
regno, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I reign, am king.*
sentĭo, si, sum, 4.	*I feel, perceive.*
subsĕquor, sĕcūtus, 3, *v. dep.*	*I follow up.*
suscĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.	*I undertake.*
vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I vex, harass.*

---

aetas, ātis, *f.*	*age, time of life.*
Arbēla, ae, *f.*	*Arbela, a town in Assyria.*
Cassivelaunus, i, *m.*	*Cassivelaunus, a British chief.*
dēlectus, ūs, *m.*	*a levy.*
hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*	*winter-quarters.*
infirmus, a, um,	*infirm, feeble.*
Pīsistrătus, i, *m.*	*Pisistratus, a despot of Athens.*
sĕnātus, ūs, *m.*	*the senate.*
stătim, *adv.*	*immediately.*

Phrases:—

Delectum habēre,	*to hold a levy.*
Maxima itinĕra,	*forced marches*
Navem (naves) conscendĕre,	*to embark*

Vocabulary 51.

exstrŭo, struxi, structum, 3.	*I heap up.*
obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2.	*I blockade, lay siege to.*
pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3.	*I place.*

Ăthēnae, ārum, *f.*	*Athens.*
bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*	*a small animal, insect.*
campus, i, *m.*	*a plain.*
dŏmĭnātus, ūs, *m.*	*rule, sovereignty.*
hōra, ae, *f.*	*an hour.*

Hanno, ōnis, *m.* — *Hanno, a Carthaginian.*

Mărăthon, ōnis, *m.* — *Marathon, a plain near Athens.*

nātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.* — *born, aged.*

passus, ūs, *m.* — *a pace* (about five feet).

Plăto, ōnis, *m.* — *Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.*

Săguntīni, ōrum, *m.* — *Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain.*

Phrases:—

Castra ponĕre, — *to pitch a camp.*

Murum, aggerem ducĕre, — *to carry a wall or mound along,* i.e. *construct.*

Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3. — *I yield, retire.*

confĕro, tŭli, collātum, 3. *v. irr.* — *I bring together, betake.*

oppōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3. — *I set against, oppose.*

pervĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4. — *I arrive at.*

pĕto, īvi *and* ĭi, ītum, 3. — *I seek.*

reverto, ti, sum, | revertor, versus, *v. dep.* } 3. — *I turn back, return.*

Alcĭbĭădes, is, *m.* — *Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.*

Aeschĭnes, is, *m.* — *Aeschines, an orator.*

Cŭrĭus, ii, *m.* — *Curius, a Roman general.*

Cănŭsĭum, ii, *n.* — *Canusium, a town in Apulia.*

Căpŭa, ae, *f.* — *Capua, a city of Campania.*

Crēta, ae, *f.* — *Crete, an island of Greece.*

exĭlĭum, ii, *n.* — *banishment, exile.*

ĭbĭ, *adv.* (*fr.* is, id), *there.*

Lăcĕdaemōn, ŏnis, *f.* — *Lacedaemon or Sparta.*

Lĕōnĭdas, ae, *m.* — *Leonidas, a king of Sparta.*

Lūcĕrĭa, ae, *f.* — *Luceria, a town in Apulia.*

Lūcĭus, ii (L.), *m.* — *Lucius, a Roman fore-name.*

mandātum, i, *n.* — *a charge, commission.*

perpĕtŭus, a, um, — *continual.*

Rhŏdus, i, *f.* — *Rhodes.*

rūs, rūris, *n.* — *the country.*

Sparta, ae, *f.* — *Sparta.*

Phrase:—

Exilium agĕre, *to live in exile.*

Vocabulary 53.

constĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3. — *I settle, determine.*

consūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3. — *I consume, waste away.*

expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3. — *I drive out.*

hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1. *I winter.*

jăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. *I lie.*

Ăpollōnĭa, ae, *f.* — *Apollonia, a town in Epirus.*

Ăristīdes, is, *m.* — *Aristides, a noble Athenian.*

Arpīnum, i, *n.* — *Arpinum, a town in Latium.*

Băbylōn, ōnis, *f.* — *Babylon, a city of Assyria.*

Cannae, ārum, *f. pl.* — *Cannae, a village in Apulia.*

Cŏnōn, ōnis, *m.* — *Conon, an Athenian general.*

Cūmae, ārum, *f. pl.* — *Cumae, a city in Campania.*

Cyprus, i, *f.* — *Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.*

Delphi, ōrum, *m. pl.* — *Delphi, a city in Greece.*

Dĭŏnȳsĭus, ii, *m.* — *Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.*

Dyrrăchium, ii, *n.*	*Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.*
Fabrĭcĭus, ii, *m.*	*Fabricius, a noble Roman.*
Hŏrātius, ii, *m.*	*Horace, a Roman poet.*
Lesbus, i, *f.*	*Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.*
Mărĭus, ii, *m.*	*Marius, a Roman general.*
quālis, e, *pron. adj.*	*of what sort, as.*
Sўrācūsae, ārum, *f. pl.*	*Syracuse.*
tālis, e, *pron. adj.*	*of that sort, such.*
Tīmŏthĕus, i, *m.*	*Timotheus, a famous Greek.*
Vĕnŭsĭa, ae, *f.*	*Venusia, a town in Italy.*

Phrase:—

Morbo consūmi,	*to be carried off by illness.*

Vocabulary 54.

advĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4.	*I arrive.*
ănĭmadverto, ti, sum, 3.	*I observe.*
confŭgĭo, fūgi, 3.	*I flee to.*
constat, stĭtit, 1. *v. impers.*	*it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.*
contĭnĕo, ŭi, tentum, 2.	*I hold together.*
nĕgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I deny.*
părĭo, pĕpĕri, partum, 3.	*I bring forth.*
prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.	*I hand down, betray.*
pŭto, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I think.*
trādo, dĭdī, dĭtum, 3.	*I hand down, deliver.*
vĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.	*I see.*

---

caecus, a, um,	*blind.*
causā (*abl.*),	*for the sake of.*
crēdĭbĭlis, e,	*credible.*
Dēlŏs, i, *f.*	*Delos, an island of Greece.*
Dīāna, ae, *f.*	*Diana, a goddess.*
flōrens, entis,	*flourishing.*
Hŏmērus, i, *m.*	*Homer.*
imprūdentĭa, ae, *f.*	*ignorance, imprudence.*
Lātōna, ae, *f.*	*Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.*
mănĭfestus, a, um,	*evident, manifest.*
nĭsĭ, *conj.*	*unless, except.*
quondam, *adv.*	*sometime, formerly.*
stella, ae, *f.*	*a star.*
Thăles, ētis, *m.*	*Thales, the philosopher.*
Trōjānus, a, um,	*Trojan, of Troy.*
vērĭsĭmĭlis, e,	*likely, probable.*

Vocabulary 55.

consentĭo, sensi, sensum, 4.	*I agree.*
crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.	*I believe.*
dīrĭpio, rĭpŭi, reptum, 3.	*I plunder, pillage.*
intellĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3.	*I understand.*
respondĕo, di, sum, 2.	*I answer.*

---

bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um,	*well-wishing, benevolent.*
bŏnum, i, *n.*	*a good, a blessing.*
dīvīnus, a, um,	*of the gods, divine.*
ēlŏquens, tis,	*eloquent.*
ignĕus, a, um,	*fiery, made of fire.*
Lūcrētĭus, ii, *m.*	*Lucretius, a Roman poet.*
mălĕvŏlus, a, um,	*ill-wishing, malevolent.*
mendax, ācis,	*lying, false.* Used as a subst., *a liar.*
prīmārĭus, a, um,	*first-rate, eminent.*
stultus, a, um,	*foolish.*
sŭpĕrus, a, um, (see p. 25)	*upper.*
turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*	*disgrace.*

Vocabulary 56.

abjĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3. — *I cast away.*
antĕpōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3. — *I prefer.* *
conjĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3. — *I fling (together).*
ēvĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4. — *I happen.*
nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I count.*
quaero, quaesīvi, sītum, 3. — *I seek, enquire.*
rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I ask.*
spĕcŭlor, ātus, 1. — *I spy out.*
vīso, vīsi, vīsum, 3. — *I go to see, visit.*
Blaesus, i, *m.* — *Blaesus, a Roman name.*
Chaerĕphon, ontis, *m.* — *Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.*
Croesus, i, *m.* — *Croesus, a king of Lydia.*
cur, *adv.* — *why? to what end?*
fēlīcĭtĕr, *adv.* — *luckily.*
incertus, a, um, — *uncertain.*
infāmis, e, — *infamous.*
injustus, a, um, — *unjust.*
Laeca, ae, *m.* — *Laeca, a Roman.*
mortŭus, a, um, — *dead.*
nŏvus, a, um, — *new.*
phĭlŏsŏphus, i, *m.* — *a philosopher.*
plānē, *adv.* — *altogether.*
quaestĭo, ōnis, *f.* — *a question.*
quantus, a, um, — *how great.*
quārē, *adv.* — *why, on what account.*
quŏt, *indec. adj.* — *how many.*
saepĕnŭmĕro, *adv.* — *oftentimes.*
subdiffĭcĭlis, e, — *somewhat difficult.*
tēlum, i, *n.* — *a dart, weapon, missile.*
ŭbi, *adv.* — *where.*
Xĕnŏphon, ontis, *m.* — *Xenophon, an Athenian.*

Vocabulary 57.

accĭdo, ĭdi, —, 3. — *to happen.*
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3. — *I see, discern.*
cŏhortor, ātus, 1. — *I encourage.*
*confīdo, fīsus sum, 3. — *I trust.*
dēterreo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. — *I frighten, deter.*
*diffīdo, fīsus sum, 3. — *I distrust.*
dīmitto, mīsi, missum, 3. — *I let go, dismiss.*
ēnarro, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I relate.*
ēnītor, nīsus and nixus, 3. — *I strive hard.*
exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I cry out.*
intrŏĕo, īvi & ĭi, ĭtum, 4. — *I enter.*
nītor, nīsus & nixus, 3. — *I strive.*
*obsto, stĭti, stĭtum, 1. — *I oppose, prevent.*
opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3. — *I press upon, overwhelm, crush.*
*persuādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, 2. — *I persuade.*
praevĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4. — *I anticipate.*
prĕmo, pressi, pressum, 3. — *I press.*
prŏhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. — *I keep off, prohibit.*
rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I object, refuse.*
spēro, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I hope.*
sto, stĕti, stătum, 1. — *I stand.*
*suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, 2. — *I advise.*
tĕneo, ŭi, tentum, 2. — *I hold, retain.*
transdūco, duxi, ductum, 3. — *I lead across.*
ventĭto, āvi, ātum, 1. — *I come frequently.*

* With Dative.

Bĭbŭlus, i, *m.* — *Bibulus, a Roman.*
fŏrum, i, *n.* — *market-place, forum.*
impĕrītus, a, um, — *unskilful.*
impransus, a, um, — *unbreakfasted.*
infirmĭtas, ātis, *f.* — *weakness.*
latro, ōnis, *m.* — *a robber.*
lūdus, i, *m.* — *play, game, school.*

magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.*	*greatly, earnestly.*
mīrus, a, um,	*wonderful.*
mŏdus, i, *m.*	*a measure, manner.*
moenĭa, ĭum, *n. pl.*	*fortifications.*
Nervĭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*
praealtus, a, um,	*very high.*
Satrĭus, ii, *m.*	*Satrius, a Roman.*
signum, i, *n.*	*a sign, signal.*
Trĕbōnĭus, ĭi, *m.*	*Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*

Phrases :—

Sĕquĭtur (with *acc* and *inf.* or *ut* and *subj.*), *it follows.* Făcĕrĕ nōn possum quin, *I cannot but.* Per me (te) stĕtit (quōmĭnus), *it was owing to me* or *you (that something did not happen).* Minimum abest quin sim, *very little is wanting that I should be ; I am very near being.*

Vocabulary 58.

ăquor, ātus, 1.	*I fetch water.*
bello, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I wage war.*
consŭlo, sŭlŭi, sultum, 3.	*I consult.*
convĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4.	*I assemble.*
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I taste.*
pābŭlor, ātus, 1.	*I forage.*
postŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I demand.*
progrĕdĭor, gressus, 3.	*I advance.*

Aedŭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.*
Ăgēsĭlāus, i, *m.*	*Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.*
Dīvitĭăcus, i, *m.*	*Divitiacus, a Gaul.*
Făbĭus, ii, *m.*	*Fabius, a Roman name.*
Lăcĕdaemŏnĭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*the Lacedaemonians.*
longĭus, *adv.* (*comp.*)	*farther, too far.*
lūdi, ōrum, *m. pl.*	*games.*
Maxĭmus, i, *m.*	*Maximus, (the greatest,) a surname of Fabius.*
nĕfās, *n. indec.*	*wickedness, impiety, impious.*
ŏpŭs, *n. indec.*	*need, necessity.*
publĭcus, a, um,	*public.*
Vēientes, um, *m. pl.*	*the people of Veii, near Rome.*
quisnam, quaenam, etc., like quis,	*who, what?*

Phrases :—

Nĕfās est, *it is* or *would be an impiety.* Ŏpŭs est, *there is need of* (with *abl.*).

Vocabulary 59.

ăcŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.	*I sharpen.*
ălo, ŭi, ĭtum *and* altum, 3.	*I nourish.*
ardĕo, arsi, arsum, 2.	*I burn, am on fire.*
cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I think, meditate.*
collŏquor, cūtus, 3.	*I converse.*
compăro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I get together.*
ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.	*I eat.*
vēnor, ātus, 1.	*I hunt.*

---

bĕātē, *adv.*	*happily.*
grātĭa, ae, *f.*	*favour.*
grātĭā, *abl.*	*for the sake of.*
haud, *adv.*	*not.*
lībĕrē, *adv.*	*freely.*
mărīnus, a, um,	*of the sea.*
ŏpĕra, ae, *f.*	*pains, labour.*
plūs, ūris, *adj. n.* in *sing.* ; in *pl.* plūres, -a.	*more.*
stŭdĭōsus, a, um,	*zealous, eager after.*

Phrases :—

Opĕram dăre, *to give one's whole energies to anything ; to devote oneself to it.* Intĕr bĭbendum, &c., *whilst drinking,* &c.

Vocabulary 60.

ădhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.	*I employ.*
observo, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I observe, respect.*
prōvĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.	*I foresee, provide.*

---

ardŭus, a, um,	*lofty, steep, difficult.*

Phrase:—

Ăgĕre aetātem, *to spend one's life.*

Vocabulary 61.

ingrĕdĭor, gressus, 3.	*I enter.*
interclūdo, si, sum, 3.	*I shut off, intercept.*
obtempĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.	*I obey, comply with.*

---

commĕātus, ūs, *m.*	*provisions, supplies.*
commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*	*a fellow-soldier, comrade.*
istūc, *adv.* (*from* iste)	*to-that-place (where you are).*
jūdĭcĭum, ii, *n.*	*judgment.*
părātus, a, um,	*prepared, ready.*
quisque, quaeque, quodque & quidque, *pron.*	*every one.*
quō, *adv.*	*whither.*

Phrase:—

Fĭĕri de ălĭquo, *to become of one;* as, quid factum est de illo, *what has become of that man?*

Vocabulary 62.

concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.	*I yield, retire.*
incendo, di, sum, 3.	*I burn.*
percĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.	*I perceive.*

---

affectus, a, um,	*made, disposed.*
Brūtus, i, *m.*	*Brutus, a Roman.*
Cassĭus, ii, *m.*	*Cassius, a Roman.*
Campānĭa, ae, *f.*	*Campania, a part of Italy.*
occŭpātus, a, um,	*engaged, busy.*
quăsĭ, *adv.*	*as if.*

Phrases:—

Consĭlium inīre, *to enter on, form, a design.* In spem vĕnire, *to conceive a hope.*

INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

LATIN WORDS.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl.	=	ablative.	*interj.*	=	interjection.
acc.	=	accusative.	*inter.*	=	interrogative.
adj.	=	adjective.	*irr.*	=	irregular.
adv.	=	adverb.	*m.*	=	masculine.
c. or *com.*	=	common gender.	*n.*	=	neuter.
comp.	=	comparative.	*p.*	=	page.
conj.	=	conjunction.	*part.*	=	participle.
dat.	=	dative.	*pl.*	=	plural.
dep.	=	deponent.	*prep.*	=	preposition.
f.	=	feminine.	*pron.*	=	pronoun, pronominal
freq.	=	frequentative.	*rel.*	=	relative.
gen.	=	genitive.	*sing.*	=	singular.
incep.	=	inceptive.	*sup.*	=	superlative.
indec.	=	indeclinable.	*v.*	=	verb.
indef.	=	indefinite.			

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.

A

ăb (ā, abs), *prep.* with *abl.*, *from, by.*

ăbĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *I go away.*

abjĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3, *I cast away.*

absum, abfŭi, abesse, *I am absent.*

absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *I consume, cut off.*

absurdus, a, um, *adj.*, *absurd.*

ăbūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I abuse.*

accēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *I approach.*

accĭdo, ĭdi (no *supine*), 3, *n. v.*, *I happen.*

accĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I receive.*

ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*, *keen, sharp.*

ăcies, ēi, *f.*, *a line of battle.*

ăcŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I sharpen.*

ăcus, ūs, *f.*, *a needle.*

ăcūtus, a, um, *adj.*, *sharp.*

ăd, *prep.* with *acc.*, *to, at, near.*

addictus, a, um, *part.*, *devoted.*

addisco, addĭdĭci (no *supine*), 3, *I learn in addition to.*

ădĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I go to.*

ădhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I employ.*

ădhortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I urge, exhort.*

ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I acquire, attain to, obtain.*

adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1, *I assist.*

admīror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I wonder at, I admire.*

adsum, adfŭi, adesse, *I am present, stand by, side with.*

ădūlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *flattery.*

advĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4, *I arrive.*

advento, āvi, ātum, 1, *v. freq.*, *I am on the point of arriving.*

adventus, ūs, *m.*, *arrival.*

adversŭs or **um,** *prep.* with *acc.*, *towards, against.*

aedĭfĭcĭum, ĭi, *n.*, *a building.*

aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I build.*

Aedŭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.*

aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*, *sick.*

Aegyptus, i, *f.*, *Egypt.*

aequus, a, um, *adj.*, *level, even, just.*

āĕr, āĕris, *m.*, *the air.*

aerumna, ae, *f.*, *trouble, affliction.*

Aeschĭnes, is, *m.*, *Aeschines an orator.*

aestas, ātis, *f.*, *summer.*

aetas, ātis, *f.*, *age, time of life.*

aeternus, a, um, *adj.*, *eternal.*

affectus, a, um, *part.*, *made, disposed.*

affĕro, attŭli, allātum, afferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bring to.*

afflīgo, flixi, flictum, 3, *I cast down, prostrate.*

Afrĭcānus, i, *m.*, *Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.*

ăger, gri, *m.*, *a field, land;* in *pl.*, *territories.*

Ăgēsĭlāus, i, *m.*, *Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.*

agger, ĕris, *m.*, *a mound.*

ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3, *I lead, act, do.* Agere aetatem, *to spend one's life.*

agrĭcŏla, ae, *m.*, *a husbandman.*

āla, ae, *f.*, *a wing.*

albus, a, um, *adj.*, *white.*

Alcĭbĭădes, is, *m.*, *Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.*

Ălexander, dri, *m.*, *Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.*

ălĭquando, *adv.*, *sometimes.*

ălĭquis, quĭd, *pron.*, *some one, something.*

ălius, a, ud, *irr. adj.*,

one of any number, one, another.
allŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3, *v. dep. I speak to.*
ălo, ălŭi, ălĭtum and altum, 3, *I nourish.*
Alpēs, ium, *m. pl., the Alps.*
alter, tĕra, tĕrum, *adj.* (*gen. sing* ĭus, *dat.* ī), *one of two, the other, second.*
altus, a, um, *adj., high, deep.*
ămābĭlis, e, *adj., lovely.*
ambŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I walk.*
ămīcĭtĭa, ae, *f., friendship.*
ămīcus, i, *m., a friend.*
ămor, oris, *m., love.*
angustus, a, um, *adj., narrow.*
ănĭmadverto, ti, sum, 3, *I observe.*
ănĭmăl, ālis, *n., an animal.*
ănĭmus, i, *m., mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings.*
annus, i, *m., a year.*
antĕ, *prep.* with *acc., before.*
antĕpōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3, *I prefer.*
Antĭŏchus, i, *m., Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria.*
antīquus, a, um, *adj., ancient.*
Ăpollo, ĭnis, *m., Apollo, a Roman divinity.*
Ăpollōnĭa, ae, *f., Apollonia, a town in Epirus.*
ăpŭd, *prep.* with *acc., at, near.*
ăqua, ae, *f., water.*
ăquĭla, ae, *f., an eagle.*
ăquor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I fetch water.*
Arbēla, ae, *f., Arbela, a town in Assyria.*
arbor, ŏris, *f., a tree.*
arcus, ūs, *m., a bow.*
arcus coelestis, *m., a rainbow.*
ardĕo, arsi, arsum, 2, *I burn, am on fire.*
ardŭus, a, um, *adj., lofty, steep, difficult.*
argentum, i, *n., silver.*
Ariovistus, i, *m., Ariovistus, a German king.*
Ăristīdes, is, *m., Aristides, an Athenian.*

arma, ōrum, *n. pl., arms.*
Arpīnum, i, *n., Arpinum, a town in Latium.*
ars, artis, *f., art, handicraft.*
arx, arcis, *f., a citadel.*
Ăsĭa, ae, *f., Asia.*
asper, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj. rough, rugged.*
aspernor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I reject, despise.*
āter, ātra, ātrum, *adj., black.*
Ăthēnae, ārum, *f. pl., Athens.*
Athēnĭensis, e, *adj., Athenian.*
atque, ac, *conj., and.*
atrox, ōcis, *adj., stern, sanguinary, cruel.*
attentē, *adv., attentively.*
attentus, a, um, *adj., attentive.*
auctōrĭtas, ātis, *f., authority.*
auctumnus, i, *m., autumn.*
audactĕr, *adv., boldly, daringly.*
audax, ācis, *adj., bold.*
audĕo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, *I dare, venture.*
audītus, ūs, *m., a hearing.*
aufĕro, abstŭli, ablātum, auferre, 3, *v. irr., I carry away.*
Augustus, i, *m., Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.*
aurĕus, a, um, *adj., golden.*
auris, is, *f., an ear.*
aurum, i, *n., gold.*
autem, *conj., but* (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).
auxĭlĭum, ii, *n., help, aid, assistance.*
ăvis, is, *f., bird.*
ăvus, i, *m., a grandfather.*

B

Băbylōn, ōnis, *f., Babylon, a city of Assyria.*
bălaena, ae, *f., a whale.*
bĕātē, *adv., happily.*
bĕātus, a, um, *adj., happy.*
bellĭcōsus, a, um, *adj., warlike.*
bello, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wage war.*
bellŭa, ae, *f., a great beast.*
bellum, i, *n., war.*
bĕnĕ, *adv., well.*
bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj., well-wishing, benevolent.*

bĕnignē, *adv., kindly.*
bĕnignus, a, um, *adj., kind.*
bestĭa, ae, *f., a beast.*
bestĭŏla, ae, *f., a small animal, insect.*
bĭbo, bĭbi, bĭbĭtum, 3, *I drink.*
Bĭbŭlus, i, *m., Bibulus, a Roman.*
Blaesus, i, *m., Blaesus, a Roman.*
blandĭor, ītus, with *dat.*, 4, *v. dep., I flatter, win upon.*
bŏna, ōrum, *n. pl., goods.*
bŏnum, i, *n., a good.*
bŏnus, a, um, *adj., good.*
brĕvis, e, *adj., short.*
Brĭtannĭa, ae, *f., Britain.*
Brūtus, i, *m., Brutus, a Roman.*

cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3, *I fall.*
caecus, a, um, *adj., blind.*
caedes, is, *f., slaughter.*
Caesar, ăris, *m., Caesar, a famous Roman.*
Căĭus (C.), *Caius, a Roman praenomen.*
calcăr, āris, *n., a spur.*
călor, ōris, *m., heat.*
Cămillus, i, *m., Camillus, a Roman general.*
Campānĭa, ae, *f., Campania, a part of Italy.*
campus, i, *m., a plain.*
cănis, is, *c., a dog.*
Cannae, ārum, *f. pl., Cannae, a village in Apulia.*
canto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sing.*
cantus, ūs, *m., a song.*
Cănŭsĭum, ii, *n., Canusium, a town in Apulia.*
Căpŭa, ae, *f., Capua, a city of Campania.*
căpŭt, ĭtis, *n., a head.*
carmĕn, ĭnis, *n., a song.*
căro, carnis, *f., flesh.*
Carthāgĭnĭensis, e, *adj., Carthaginian.*
Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f., Carthage, a city of Africa.*
cārus, a, um, *adj., dear.*
cāsĕus, i, *m., cheese.*
Cassĭus, ii, *m., Cassius, a Roman.*
Cassivelaunus, i, *m., Cassivelaunus, a British chief.*
castīgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I chastise.*
castra, ōrum, *n. pl., a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, *m.*, *chance, accident.*

Cătĭlīna, ae, *m.*, *Catiline, a conspirator.*

Căto, ōnis, *m.*, *Cato, a noble Roman.*

causa, ae, *f.*, *a cause.* In *abl.*, *on account of.*

cautus, a, um, *adj.* and *part.*, *cautious, secured*

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *I yield, retire.*

cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, *adj.*, *swift.*

celsus, a, um, *adj.*, *lofty, tall.*

centŭrĭa, ae, *f.*, *a century.*

cĕrăsum, i, *n.*, *a cherry.*

cĕrăsus, i, *f.*, *the cherry-tree.*

cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3, *I see, discern.*

certus, a, um, *adj.*, *certain.*

cervus, i, *m.*, *a stag.*

cētĕri (caet.), cētĕrae, cētĕra, *adj. pl.*, *the rest.*

Chaerĕphōn, ontis, *m.*, *Chaerephon, a disciple of Socrates.*

Cĭcĕro, ōnis, *m.*, *Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.*

Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.*

cingo, cinxi, cinctum, 3, *I surround.*

circā, circum, *prep.* with *acc.*, *around.*

circĭtĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*, *about.*

cis, citrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *on this side of.*

cīvīlis, e, *adj.*, *belonging to a citizen, civil.*

cīvis, is, *com.*, *a citizen.*

cīvĭtas, tātis, *f.*, *the state, citizenship.*

clādes, is, *f.*, *slaughter, disaster.*

clăm, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.*, *secretly, without the knowledge of.*

clāmor, ōris, *m.*, *a shout.*

clārus, a, um, *adj.*, *clear, renowned.*

classis, is, *f.*, *a fleet.*

coelestis, e, *adj.*, *belonging to the heavens.*

coelum, i, *n.*, *heaven.*

coeno, āvi and ātus sum, 1, *I sup, dine.* See p. 85.

cŏĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I join together.*

cŏercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I restrain, curb.*

cōgĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think, meditate.*

cognĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *knowledge.*

cognosco, nōvi, nĭtum, 3, *I learn, ascertain.*

cŏhors, tis, *f.*, *a cohort.*

cŏhortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I encourage.*

collŏquor, cūtus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I converse.*

cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3, *I cultivate, cherish; dwell.*

cŏlōnĭa, ae, *f.*, *a colony.*

cŏlor, ōris, *m.*, *colour.*

cŏlumba, ae, *f.*, *a dove.*

cŏmes, ĭtis, *com.*, *a companion.*

cŏmĭtor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I accompany.*

commĕātus, ūs, *m.*, *provisions, supplies.*

commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*, *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

committo, mīsi, missum, 3, *I send together, join (fight) battle.*

compăro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I get together.*

comprĕhendo, di, sum, 3, *I seize.*

concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3, *I yield, retire.*

confĕro, tŭli, collātum, conferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bring together, betake.*

confĭcio, fēci, fectum, 3, *I finish, accomplish.*

confīdo, fīsus sum, 3, with *dat.*, *I trust.* See p. 85.

confĭtĕor, fessus, 2, *v. dep.*, *I confess.*

confŭgio, fūgi, 3, *I flee to.*

conjĭcio, jēci, jectum, 3, *I fling (together).*

conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a conspiracy.*

Cŏnōn, ōnis, *m.*, *Conon, an Athenian general.*

cōnor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I attempt.*

conscendo, di, sum, 3, *I mount, go on board (ship).*

conscientĭa, ae, *f.*, *conscience.*

consentĭo, nsi, nsum, 4, *I agree.*

conservo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I preserve, maintain.*

consĭlĭum, i, *n.*, *a plan, counsel.*

constat, stĭtit, 1, *impers. v.*, *it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.*

constĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I settle, determine, resolve.*

consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, *habit.*

consul, ŭlis, *m.*, *a consul.*

consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*, *office of consul, consulate.*

consŭlo, lŭi, ltum, 3, *I consult.*

consūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3, *I consume, waste away.*

contemno, tempsi, temptum, 3, *I despise.*

contemplor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I observe carefully, contemplate.*

contendo, di, sum and tum, 3, *I strain, hasten.*

contentus, a, um, *adj.*, *contented.*

contĭnĕo, ŭi, tentum, 2, *I hold together.*

contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *against, contrary to.*

contrăho, traxi, tractum, 3, *I draw together.*

convĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4, *I assemble.*

convŏco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I call together.*

cōpĭa, ae, *f.*, *plenty.*

cōpĭae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *forces.*

cŏr, cordis, *n.*, *the heart.*

cōram, *prep.* with *abl.*, *in the presence of.*

Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*, *Corinth.*

Cornēlĭa, ae, *f.*, *Cornelia, a Roman matron.*

cornu, ūs, *n.*, *a horn.*

cŏrōna, ae, *f.*, *a crown.*

corpus, ŏris, *n.*, *a body.*

corrĭgo, rexi, rectum, 3, *I correct.*

creātor, ōris, *m.*, *a creator.*

crēdĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*, *credible.*

crēdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3, *I believe.*

crĕo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I create, make.*

Crēta, ae, *f.*, *Crete, an island of Greece.*

Croesus, i, *m.*, *Croesus, a king of Lydia.*

crŭcĭātus, ūs, *m.*, *torture.*

crūdēlis, e, *adj.*, *cruel.*

crūs, crūris, *n.*, *a leg.*

culpa, ae, *f.*, *blame, fault.*

cum, *prep.* with *abl.*, *with.*

Cūmae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *Cumae, a city in Campania.*

cunctus, a, um, *adj.*, *all, all together.*

cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.*, *desire, passion.*

exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cry out.*
excŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully.*
exemplum, i, *n.*, *an example.* [*go out.*
exĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I*
exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I exercise.*
exercĭtus, ūs, *m.*, *an army.*
exhĭlăro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cheer.*
exilium, ii, *n.*, *banishment, exile.*
expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3, *I drive out.*
expĕrior, pertus, 4, *v. dep.*, *I try, experience.*
expōno, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3, *I put forth, disembark* (*troops*).
expugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take by storm.*
exstrŭo, struxi, structum, 3, *I heap up.*
extrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, *outside of.*

F

Făbĭus, ii, *m.*, *a Roman name.*
Fabrĭcĭus, ii, *m.*, *Fabricius, a noble Roman.*
făbŭla, ae, *f.*, *a fable, story.*
făcĭes, ēi, *f.*, *countenance.*
făcĭle, *adv.*, *easily.*
făcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *easy.*
făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*, *a bold act, daring deed, crime.*
făcĭo, fēci, factum, făcĕrĕ, 3, *I make.*
fămēs, is, *f.*, *hunger.*
fătĕor, fassus, 2, *v. dep.*, *I confess.*
fēlĭcĭtĕr, *adv.*, *luckily.*
fēlix, īcis, *adj.*, *fortunate, successful.*
fēmĭna, ae, *f.*, *a woman.*
fĕrē, *adv.*, *almost, commonly.*
fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irreg.*, *I bear, carry, endure.*
fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*, *fierce, spirited.*
ferrum, i, *n.*, *iron.*
fīcus, ūs, *f.*, *a fig, fig-tree.*
fĭdēlis, e, *adj.*, *faithful.*
fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*, *faith, fidelity.*
fīdo, fīsus sum, fīdere, 3, *v. n.* (usu. with *dat.*), *I trust.* See p. 85.
fīdus, a, um, *adj.*, *faithful.*
fīlĭa, ae, *f.*, *a daughter.*
fīlĭus, ii, *m.*, *a son.*

fingo, finxi, fictum, 3, *I frame, feign, invent.*
fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I limit, put an end to.*
fīnis, is, *m.*, *end, limit* (in pl. *territories*).
fīo, factus sum, fĭĕrī, 3, *v. irr.*, *I become, am made.*
firmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I strengthen, make strong.*
firmus, a, um, *adj.*, *strong.*
flĕo, flēvi, flētum, 2, *I weep.*
flo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I blow.*
flōrens, ntis, *adj.*, *flourishing.*
flōrĕo, ŭi, 2, *I bloom, flourish.*
flōs, ōris, *m.*, *a flower.*
flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*, *a current, river.*
flŭo, fluxi, fluxum, 3, *I flow.*
flŭvĭus, ii, *m.*, *a river.*
fŏdĭo, fōdi, fossum, fŏdĕre, 3, *I dig.*
fons, ntis, *m.*, *a fountain.*
fortĕ, *adv.*, *by chance.*
fortis, e, *adj.*, *strong, brave.*
fortissĭmē, *adv.*, *very bravely.*
fortĭtĕr, *adv.*, *bravely.*
fortūna, ae, *f.*, *fortune.*
fŏrum, i, *n.*, *market-place, forum.*
fossa, ae, *f.*, *a ditch.*
frāter, tris, *m.*, *a brother.*
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, *dishonesty.*
frīgus, ŏris, *n.*, *cold.*
frons, ntis, *f.*, *the forehead, brow.*
fructus, ūs, *m.*, *fruit.*
frūges, um, *f. pl.*, *fruits, a crop.*
fruor, frŭĭtus and fructus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I enjoy.*
fŭgĭo, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, fŭgĕre, 3, *I flee, escape.*
fŭgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I put to flight.*
fulgĕo, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine.*
fulgŭr, ŭris, *n.*, *lightning.*
fungor, functus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I discharge.*
fūnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a funeral.*
fŭror, ōris, *m.*, *madness.*

G

Gallĭa, ae, *f.*, *Gaul.*
gaudĕo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre, 2, *v. n.*, *I rejoice.* See p. 85.
gaudĭum, ii, *n.*, *joy.*
gĕner, ĕri, *m.*, *a son-in-law.*
gĕnu, ūs, *n.*, *a knee.*
gĕnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a race, class.*
Germāni, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Germans.*
gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3, *I carry on, wage* (*war*).
glădĭus, ii, *m.*, *a sword.*
glōrĭa, ae, *f.*, *glory.*
gnāvĭtĕr, *adv.*, *actively, vigorously.*
Gracchus, i, *m.*, *Gracchus, a noble Roman.*
grăcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *thin.*
Graecĭa, ae, *f.*, *Greece.*
Graecus, a, um, *adj.*, *Grecian, Greek.*
grāmen, ĭnis, *n.*, *grass.*
grandĭnat, 1, *v. impers.*, *it hails.*
grātĭā, *abl. sing.*, *for the sake of.*
grātus, a, um, *adj.*, *pleasing.*
grăvis, e, *adj.*, *heavy, severe.*
grăvĭtĕr, *adv.*, *heavily, severely, grievously.*
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I taste.*

H

hăbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I have.*
hăbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dwell.*
Hannĭbal, ălis, *m.*, *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*
Hanno, ōnis, *m.*, *Hanno, a Carthaginian.*
Hasdrŭbal, ălis, *m.*, *Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.*
hasta, ae, *f.*, *a spear.*
haud, *adv.*, *not.*
Hellespontus, i, *m.*, *the Hellespont* (*now the Dardanelles*).
Helvĕtĭa, ae, *f.*, *the country of the Helvetii* (*in Switzerland*).
Helvĕtĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *Helvetian.*
hĕrī, *adv.*, *yesterday.*
hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*, *winter quarters.*
hībernus, a, um, *adj.*, *of winter, wintry.*
hiems, hĭĕmis, *f.*, *winter.*

hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter.*
hĭlăris, e, *adj., cheerful.*
Hŏmērus, i, *m., Homer, a Greek poet.*
hŏmo, ĭnis, *com., a man, woman.*
hŏnor, ōris, *m., an honour.*
hōra, ae, *f., an hour.*
Hŏrātĭus, ii, *m., Horatius, a Roman poet.*
hortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I urge, exhort, encourage.*
hortus, i, *m., a garden.*
hostĭa, ae, *f., a victim.*
hostis, is, *com., an enemy, public enemy.*
hūmānus, a, um, *adj., human.*
hŭmĭlis, e, *adj., low.* See p. 25.

I

ĭbi, *adv., there.*
ignāvē, *adv., indolently*
ignāvĭa, ae, *f., cowardice.*
ignĕus, a, um, *adj., fiery, made of fire.*
ignōrātĭo, ōnis, *f., ignorance.*
ĭmāgo, ĭnis, *f., a likeness, portrait, image.*
ĭmĭtor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I imitate.*
immŏlo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice.*
immortālis, e, *adj., immortal.*
immortālĭtas, ātis, *f., immortality.*
impĕrātor, ōris, *m., a military commander, a general.*
impĕrītus, a, um, *adj., unskilful.*
impĕrĭum, ii, *n., empire.*
impĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, with *dat., I command.*
impĕtus, ūs, *m., an attack, onset.*
imprānsus, a, um, *adj., unbreakfasted.*
imprŏbus, a, um, *adj., dishonest, wicked.*
imprūdentĭa, ae, *f., ignorance, imprudence.*
in, *prep.* with *acc., into;* with *abl., in.*
incendĭum, ii, *n., a fire, conflagration*
incendo, di, sum, 3, *I set fire to, burn.*
incertus, a, um, *adj., uncertain.*
incĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I begin.*
incŏla, ae, *com., an inhabitant.*
incūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with.*
Indi, ōrum, *m. pl., Indians, people of India.*
indoctus, a, um, *adj., unlearned.*
indulgĕo, dulsi, dultum, 2, with *dat., I indulge.*
industrĭus, a, um, *adj., industrious, busy.*
ĭnĕo, ii, ĭtum, 4, *I go into, enter.*
ĭners, tis, *adj., helpless, sluggish.*
infāmĭa, ae, *f., infamy.*
infāmis, e, *adj., infamous.*
infectus, a, um, *adj., undone.*
infĕrĭor, ius, *comp.* of inferus, *adj., lower, inferior.*
infĕro, intŭli, illātum, inferre, 3, *v. irr., I carry into.*
infīnītus, a, um, *adj., unbounded, infinite.*
infirmĭtas, ātis, *f., weakness.*
infirmus, a, um, *adj., weak, infirm, feeble.*
infrā, *prep* with *acc., below.*
infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3, *I break, impair.*
ingens, entis, *adj., immense.*
ingrĕdĭor, gressus sum, 3, *v. dep., I enter.*
ĭnĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, *f., enmity.*
ĭnĭmīcus, a, um, *adj., unfriendly.*
ĭnĭtĭum, ii, *n., a beginning.*
injustē, *adv., unjustly.*
injustus, a, um, *adj., unjust.*
innŭmĕrus, a, um, *adj., innumerable.*
ĭnops, ŏpis, *adj., destitute.*
instĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I appoint, institute.*
instrūmentum, i, *n., an instrument.*
instrŭo, xi, ctum, 3, *I arrange, draw up in order.*
insŭla, ae, *f., an island.*
insum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.,* with *dat., I am in* or *upon.*
intellĭgo, lexi, lectum, 3, *I understand.*
intĕr, *prep.* with *acc., between, among.*
interclūdo, clūsi, clūsum, 3, *I shut off, intercept.*
intĕrĕo, ii, ĭtum, 4, *I perish.*
interfĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3, *I put to death, kill.*
intĕrĭtus, ūs, *m., destruction.*
intersum, fŭi, esse, *v. irr.,* with *dat., I am among.*
intrā, *prep.* with *acc., inside of, within.*
intro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter.*
intrŏĕo, ii, ĭtum, 4, *I go into, enter.*
intŭĕor, ĭtus sum, 2, *v. dep., I look upon, into.*
intŭmesco, ŭi, 3, *v. incep., I swell.*
invĭdĭa, ae, *f., envy, ill-will.*
īra, ae, *f., anger.*
īrascor, īrātus, 3, *v. dep., I am angry.*
istūc, *adv., to-that-place, thither (where you are).*
ĭtă, *adv., in that way, thus.*
Ĭtălĭa, ae, *f., Italy.*
ĭter, ĭtinĕris, *n., a journey.*

J

jăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I lie.*
jăcĭo, jēci, jactum, 3, *I throw.*
jam, *adv., now, already.*
jŭbĕo, jussi, jussum, 2, *I order, bid.*
jūcundus, a, um, *adj., pleasant.*
jūcundē, *adv., delightfully, pleasantly.*
jūdex, ĭcis, *com., a judge.*
jūdĭcĭum, ii, *n., judgment.*
jūdĭco, āvi, ātum, 1, *I judge.*
jungo, junxi, junctum, 3, *I join.*
Jūno, ōnis, *f., Juno, a goddess.*
jūro, āvi or ātus sum, 1, *I swear.* See p. 85.
jūs, jūris, *n., right, law.*
jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n., an oath.*
justē, *adv., justly.*
justus, a, um, *adj., just.*
jŭvĕnis, is, *com., a young man* or *woman.*
jŭventūs, ūtis, *f., youth.*
juxtā, *prep.* with *acc., near, hard by, next to.*

L

Lābĭēnus, i, *m.*, *Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
lăbŏr, ōris, *m.*, *labour, hardship.*
lābor, lapsus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I glide, pass away, fall.*
lac, lactis, *n.*, *milk.*
Lăcĕdaemon, ŏnis, *f.*, *Lacedaemon* or *Sparta.*
Lăcĕdaemŏnĭi, ōrum, *m.*, *the Lacedaemonians.*
lăcĭo, lăcĕre, 3, *I draw, entice* (rare). See p 120.
lăcus, ūs, *m.*, *a lake.*
Laeca, ae, *m.*, *Laecă, a Roman.*
laetĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, *joy.*
laetus, a, um, *adj.*, *joyful.*
lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*, *a stone.*
lăpĭdĕus, a, um, *adj.*, *of stone.*
lātē, *adv.*, *widely, wide.*
Lătīnus, a, um, *adj.*, *Latin.*
Lātōna, ae, *f.*, *Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.*
latro, ōnis, *m.*, *a robber.*
lātus, a, um, *adj.*, *wide, broad.*
laudo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I praise.*
laus, laudis, *f.*, *praise.*
lēgātus, i, *m.*, *ambassador, lieutenant.*
lĕgio, ōnis, *f.*, *a legion.*
lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, 3, *I gather, read.*
lĕo, ōnis, *m.*, *a lion.*
Lĕōnĭdas, ae, *m.*, *Leonidas, a king of Sparta.*
lĕpus, ŏris, *m.*, *a hare.*
Lesbus, i, *f.*, *Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.*
lĕvis, e, *adj.*, *light.*
lex, lēgis, *f.*, *a law.*
lĭber, bri, *m.*, *a book.*
lĭber, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, *free.*
lĭbĕrē, *adv.*, *freely.*
lĭbĕri, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *children.*
lĭbĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I free, deliver.*
lĭbertas, ātis, *f.*, *freedom, liberty.*
lĭbet, lĭbŭit and lĭbĭtum est, lĭbēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *dat.*, *it pleases.*
Lĭbўa, ae, *f.*, *Africa.*
lĭcet, lĭcŭit and lĭcĭtum est, lĭcēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *dat.*, *it is lawful, allowed.*
lictor, ōris, *m.*, *a lictor.*
lingua, ae, *f.*, *tongue, language.*
lĭquet, lĭquēre, 2, *v. impers.*, with *dat.*, *it is clear, evident.*
lĭtĕra, ae, *f.*, *a letter of the alphabet.*
lĭtĕrae, ārum, *f. pl.*, *letters, learning,* also *an epistle, letter.*
lītus, ŏris, *n.*, *a shore.*
Līvius, ii, *m.*, *Livy, a Roman historian.*
lŏcus, i, *m.*, *a place* (*in pl.* loci, *single places*; loca, *places connected with one another, regions*).
longē, *adv.*, *far, far off.*
longinquĭtas, ātis, *f.*, *length, distance.*
longinquus, a, um, *adj.*, *long, distant.*
longius, *adv.*, *comp. of* longē, *farther, too far.*
longus, a, um, *adj.*, *long.*
lŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I speak.*
Lūcĕrĭa, ae, *f.*, *Luceria, a town in Apulia.*
lūcescit, (illuxit,) lūcescĕre, 3, *v. impers.*, *it becomes light.*
Lūcĭus, ii, *m.*, *Lucius, a Roman fore-name.*
Lūcrētĭus, ii, *m.*, *Lucretius, a Roman poet.*
lūdi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *games.*
lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, 3, *I play.*
lūdus, i, *m.*, *play, game, school.*
lūna, ae, *f.*, *the moon.*
luscĭnĭa, ae, *f.*, *a nightingale.*
lux, lūcis, *f.*, *light.*
Lўcurgus, i, *m.*, *Lycurgus, the Spartan legislator.*

M

Măcĕdo, ŏnis, *m.*, *a Macedonian.*
măgis, *adv.* (*sup.* maxĭmē), *rather, in a higher degree.*
măgister, tri, *m.*, *a master, teacher.*
măgistrātus, ūs, *m.*, *a magistrate.*
magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *adj.*, *magnificent.*
magnŏpĕrē, *adv.*, *greatly, earnestly.*
magnus, a, um, *adj.*, *great.*
mājōres, um, *m. pl.*, *ancestors.*
mălĕ, *adv.*, *comp.* pējus, *sup.* pessĭmē, *badly, ill.*
mălĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.*, *ill-wishing, malevolent.*
mālo, mālui, malle, *irr. v.*, *I am more willing, I prefer, have rather.*
mālum, i, *n.*, *an apple.*
mălum, i, *n.*, *an evil.*
mālus, i, *f.*, *an apple-tree.*
mălus, a, um, *adj.*, *bad, wicked, evil.*
mandātum, i, *n.*, *a charge, commission.*
măneo, mansi, mansum, 2, *I remain*
mănĭfestus, a, um, *adj.*, *evident, manifest.*
mănĭpŭlus, i, *m.*, *a maniple.*
mănus, ūs, *f.*, *a hand*
Mărăthon, ōnis, *f.*, *Marathon, a plain near Athens.*
măre, is, *n.*, *the sea.*
margărīta, ae, *f.*, *a pearl.*
mărīnus, a, um, *adj.*, *of the sea.*
Mărĭus, ii, *m.*, *Marius, a Roman general.*
marmor, ŏris, *n.*, *marble.*
māter, tris, *f.*, *a mother.*
Maxĭmus, i, *m.*, *Maximus,* (*the greatest,*) *a surname of Fabius.*
mĕdĭtor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I meditate on, study.*
membrāna, ae, *f.*, *thin skin, membrane.*
mĕmor, ŏris, *adj.*, *mindful.*
mĕmŏrābĭlis, e, *adj.*, *to be remembered, memorable.*
mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f.*, *memory.*
Mĕnăpĭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *Menapii, a Gallic tribe.*
mendax, ācis, *adj.* and *subs.*, *lying, false, a liar.*
mens, mentis, *f.*, *mind.*
mensis, is, *m.*, *a month.*
mentior, ītus, 4, *v. dep.*, *I lie, tell a lie.*
mĕrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I deserve.* Also mĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*
mĕtallum, i, *n.*, *a metal.*
mĕtĭor, mensus, 4, *v. dep.*, *I measure.*
mĕtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I fear.*
mĕtus, ūs, *m.*, *fear.*
mĕus, a, um,* *poss. pron.*, *my, mine.*

* *Voc. sing.* mi.

migro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate, depart*

miles, mīlitis, *m.*, *a soldier.*

Minerva, ae, *f.*, *Minerva.*

mĭnĭmē, *adv.*, *in the least degree.*

mĭnister, tri, *m.*, *a servant.*

mīror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I wonder at, admire.*

mīrus, a, um, *adj.*, *wonderful.*

mĭser, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj.*, *wretched*

mĭsĕrĕor, rtus or ĭtus, 2, *v. dep.*, *I pity, have pity on.*

mĭsĕret, ŭit & misĕrĭtum est, misĕrēre, *v. impers.*, *it excites pity.*

mītis, e, *adj.*, *mild.*

mitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *I send.*

mŏdus, i, *m.*, *a measure, manner.*

moenĭa, ium, *n. pl.*, *fortifications.*

mŏlestus, a, um, *adj.*, *troublesome.*

mollĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I soften, assuage.*

mollis, e, *adj.*, *soft, mellow.*

mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I advise, warn.*

mons, tis, *m.*, *a mountain.*

mŏnŭmentum, i, *n.*, *a monument.*

morbus, i, *m.*, *a disease.*

mŏrĭor, mortŭus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I die* (*fut part.* mŏrĭtūrus, *about to die*).

mors, tis, *f.*, *death.*

mortālis, e, *adj.*, *mortal.*

mortŭus, a, um, *adj.*, *dead.*

mōs, mōris, *m.*, *manner, custom.*

mŏvĕo, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *I move, disturb, trouble.*

mox, *adv.*, *soon, shortly.*

mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.*, *a woman, wife.*

multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*, *a multitude.*

multus, a, um, *adj.*, *much, many.*

mundus, i, *m.*, *the world.*

mūnīmentum, i, *n.*, *a fortification.*

mūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I fortify.*

mūnus, ĕris, *n.*, *a gift, duty, function.*

mūrus, i, *m.*, *a wall.*

mūto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change.*

N

narro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate.*

nascor, nātus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I am born.*

nātūra, ae, *f.*, *nature.*

nātus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*, *born, aged.*

nauta, ae, *m.*, *a sailor.*

nāvālis, e, *adj.*, *naval.*

nāvis, is, *f.*, *a ship.*

nē, *conj.*, *not, lest, that not.* See pp. 47, 97.

nec, **nĕquĕ**, *conj.*, *neither, nor.*

nĕcessārĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *necessary, needful.*

nĕfās, *indecl. n.*, *wickedness, impiety.*

nĕgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny.*

nĕgōtĭum, ii, *n.*, *business.*

nēmo, ĭnis, *com.*, *nobody.*

Neptūnus, i, *m.*, *Neptune, the god of the sea.*

nēquam, *indecl. adj.*, *comp.* nēquĭor, *sup.* nēquissĭmus, *worthless.*

nĕquĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, īre, 4, *I am unable, cannot.*

Nĕro, ōnis, *m.*, *Nero, a Roman emperor.*

Nervĭi, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.*

nescĭo, īvi or ĭi, ītum, 4, *I am ignorant of.*

neuter, tra, trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat.* ī), *neither of two.*

nēve, *conj.*, *and that not, and not, nor.*

nīdus, i, *m.*, *a nest.*

nĭger, gra, grum, *adj.*, *black.*

nĭhil, *indecl. n.*, *nothing.*

Nīlus, i, *m.*, *the Nile, a river in Egypt.*

nĭmis, *adv.*, *too, too much.*

ningit, ninxit, ningĕre, 3, *v. impers.*, *it snows.*

nĭsi, *conj.*, *unless, except.*

nitor, nīsus and nixus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I strive.*

nix, nĭvis, *f.*, *snow.*

nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*, *distinguished, noble, celebrated.*

nŏcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*, *I hurt, harm.*

nōlo, nōlŭi, nolle, *v. irreg.*, *I am unwilling, I do not wish.*

nōmen, ĭnis, *n.*, *a name.*

nōn, *adv.*, *not.*

nonnullus, a, um, *adj.*, *some.*

nonnunquam, *adv.*, *sometimes.*

noster, tra, trum, *poss. pron.*, *our, ours.*

nōtus, a, um, *adj.*, *known.*

nŏvus, a, um, *adj.*, *new.*

nox, noctis, *f.*, *night.*

noxĭus, a, um, *adj.*, *hurtful, injurious, guilty.*

nūbes, is, *f.*, *a cloud.*

nullus, a, um, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat.* ī), *none.*

nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I count.*

nŭmĕrus, i, *m.*, *a number.*

nunc, *adv.*, *now.*

nunquam, *adv.*, *never.*

nūtrĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I nourish, nurture.*

O

ŏb, *prep.* with *acc.*, *on account of.*

ŏbēdĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, with *dat.*, *I obey.*

ŏbĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I meet*, esp. *meet death, I die.*

oblīviscor, lītus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I forget.*

obscūro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I darken, obscure.*

observo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I observe, respect.*

obses, ĭdis, *com.*, *a hostage.*

obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I blockade, lay siege to.*

obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a siege, blockade.*

obsto, stĭti, stĭtum, 1, *I oppose, prevent.*

obsum, obfŭi or offŭi, obesse, *v. irreg.*, with *dat.*, *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*

obtempĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I obey, comply with.*

occĭdens, tis, *m.*, *the west, the setting sun.*

occīdo, īdi, īsum, 3, *I slay, kill.*

occŭpātus, a, um, *adj.*, *engaged, busy.*

occŭpo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I seize upon.*

ōcĕănus, i, *m.*, *the ocean.*

ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*, *an eye.*

ŏdĭum, ii, *n.*, *hatred.*

ŏdor, ōris, *m.*, *a smell, scent.*

offĕro, obtŭli, oblātum, offerre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I present.*

ōlim, *adv.*, *formerly, once upon a time.*

omnis, e, *adj.*, *all, every.*

praefĕro, tŭli, lātum, 3, *v. irreg., I prefer.*
praemitto, mīsi, missum, 3, *I send on before.*
praemĭum, ii, *n., a reward.*
praesens, entis, *adj., present.*
praestābĭlis, e, *adj., excellent.*
praestans, antis, *adj., excellent.*
praesum, fŭi, esse, *v. irreg.,* with *dat., I am before, at the head of.*
praetĕr, *prep.* with *acc., beside.*
praetĕrĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *v. irreg., I pass by.*
praetĕrĭtus, a, um, *adj., past.*
praevĕnĭo, vēni, ventum, 4, *I anticipate.*
prĕmo, pressi, pressum, 3, *I press.*
prīmārĭus, a, um, *adj., first-rate, eminent.*
prīmo, *adv., at first.*
prīmum, *adv., first, in the first place.*
pristĭnus, a, um, *adj., former, olden.*
prĭus, *adv., sooner, before.*
prō, *prep.* with *abl., before, for, on behalf of.*
prŏbē, *adv., rightly, properly.*
prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f., honesty, integrity.*
prŏbus, a, um, *adj., good, upright.*
prōdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3, *I hand down, betray.*
proelĭum, ii, *n., a battle.*
prŏfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irreg., I extend.*
prŏfĭciscor, fectus, 3, *v. dep., I set out.*
prŏfundus, a, um, *adj., deep.*
prŏgrĕdĭor, gressus, 3, *v. dep., I advance.*
prŏhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I keep off, prohibit.*
prŏpĕ, *prep.* with *acc., near.*
prŏpĕ, *adv., nearly.*
prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj., near.*
proptĕr, *prep.* with *acc., on account of.*
prōsum, fŭi, prōdesse, *v. irreg., I am serviceable to, do good to.*
prōvĭdĕo, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide.*
proxĭmus, a, um, *sup. adj., nearest, next.*
prūdens, ntis, *adj., prudent, sagacious.*
prūdentĭa, ae, *f., knowledge, prudence.*
prūnum, i, *n., a plum.*
prūnus, i, *f., a plum-tree.*
publĭcus, a, um, *adj., public.*
pŭdet, ŭit or pŭdĭtum est, ēre, 2, *v. impers., it shames.*
pŭella, ae, *f., a girl.*
pŭer, ĕri, *m., a boy.*
pugna, ae, *f., a battle.*
pugno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight.*
pulcher, cra, crum, *adj., beautiful.*
Pūnĭcus, a, um, *adj., Punic, Carthaginian.*
pūnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I punish.*
pŭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think.*
Pȳthāgŏras, ae, *m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*

Q

quaero, quaesīvi, sītum, 3, *I seek, enquire.*
quaestĭo, ōnis, *f., a question.*
quālis, e, *pron. adj., of what sort, as.*
quam, *adv.* and *conj., than, as.*
quantus, a, um, *adj., how great.*
quārē, *adv., why, on what account.*
quăsī, *adv., as if.*
quătĭo, *no perf.,* quassum, 3, *I shake.*
quercus, ūs, *f., an oak.*
quĭă, *conj., because.*
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, *pron. indef., a certain, certain one, somebody.*
quĭdem, *adv., indeed.*
quin, *conj., that not* (with *subj.*). See pp. 48, 97.
quis, quae, quid, *pron. interr., who, which, what?*
quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *interrog. pron., who, which, what?*
quisquĕ, quaeque, quodque (and *subst.* quidque or quicque), *indef. pron., every one, whoever.*
quō, *adv., whither.*
quō, *conj.* with *subj., in order that.* See p. 98.
quŏd, *conj., because.*
quōmĭnus, *conj.* with *subj., that not.* See p. 98.
quondam, *adv., some time, formerly.*
quŏquĕ, *conj., also, even, too.*
quŏt, *indecl. adj., how many?*
quŏtīdĭē, *adv., every day.*
quum, *adv.* and *conj., when.*

R

rādix, īcis, *f., a root.*
răpax, ācis, *adj., rapacious.*
răpĭdus, a, um, *adj., rapid.*
răpĭo, ŭi, raptum, ĕre, 3, *I seize.*
rārō, *adv., seldom, rarely.*
rārus, a, um, *adj., rare.*
rătĭo, ōnis, *f., reason.*
rĕcĭto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I read aloud.*
rĕcordor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I call to mind.*
rĕcrĕo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I refresh.*
rectus, a, um, *adj., straight, right.*
rĕcŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I recover, get back.*
rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, 1, *I object, refuse.*
rĕdămo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I love in return.*
rĕdĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I return.*
rĕfĕro, rĕtŭli or rettŭli, rĕlātum, rĕferre, 3, *v. irreg., I bring back.*
rēgīna, ae, *f., a queen.*
regno, āvi, ātum, 1, *I reign, am king.*
regnum, i, *n., a kingdom.*
rĕgo, rexi, rectum, 3, *I rule.*
Rēgŭlus, i, *m., Regulus, a famous Roman.*
rĕlinquo, līqui, lictum, 3, *I leave, quit.*
rĕmĭniscor, 3, *I remember.*
rĕnŏvo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I make new again, restore.*
rĕpĕrio, pĕri, pertum, 4, *I find.*
rēs, rĕi, *f., a thing.*
rĕsisto, stĭti, stĭtum, 3, with *dat., I resist.*
respondĕo, di, sum, 2, with *dat., I answer.*

rēte, is, *n.*, *a net.*
rĕus, i, *m.*, *an accused man, defendant.*
rĕverto, ti, sum, 3, *I turn back, return.*
rĕvertor, versus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I turn back, return.*
rex, rēgis, *m.*, *a king.*
Rhēnus, i, *m.*, *the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, i, *m.*, *the Rhone.*
Rhŏdus, i, *f.*, *Rhodes, an island of Greece.*
rīpa, ae, *f.*, *a bank, shore.*
rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I ask.*
Rōma, ae, *f.*, *Rome* (*the city*).
Rōmānus, *m.*, *a Roman.*
Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.*, *Roman.*
Rōmŭlus, i, *m.*, *Romulus.*
rŏsa, ae, *f.*, *a rose.*
Roscĭus, ii, *m.*, *Roscius, a Roman.*
rūpes, is, *f.*, *a rock.*
rūs, rūris, *n.*, *the country.*

S

săcer, cra, crum, *adj.*, *sacred.*
saepĕ, *adv.*, *often.*
saepĕnŭmĕro, *adv.*, *oftentimes.*
saepissĭmē, *adv.*, *very often.*
săgitta, ae, *f.*, *an arrow.*
Săguntīni, ōrum, *m. pl.*, *Saguntines, the people of Saguntum in Spain.*
Sălămis, īnis, *f.*, *Salamis, an island near Athens.*
Sallustĭus, ii, *m.*, *Sallust, a Roman historian.*
salto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dance.*
sălūs, ūtis, *f.*, *safety.*
salvus, a, um, *adj.*, *safe.*
sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*, *blood.*
săpiens, ntis, *adj.* and *subs.*, *wise, wise-man.*
săpientĭa, ae, *f.*, *wisdom.*
săpĭo, īvi or ĭi, 3, *I savour of, taste, am wise.*
sătis, *adv.*, *enough, sufficiently.*
Satrĭus, ii, *m.*, *Satrius, a Roman.*
scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*, *a crime.*
scĭentĭa, ae, *f.*, *knowledge.*
scĭo, īvi, ītum, 4, *I know.*
Scīpĭo, ōnis, *m.*, *Scipio, a noble Roman.*
scrībo, psi, ptum, 3, *I write.*
scriptor, ōris, *m.*, *a writer, author.*
scūtum, i, *n.*, *a shield.*
Scythae, ārum, *m. pl.*, *the Scythians.*
sĕcundum, *prep.* with *acc.*, *following, in accordance with.*
sĕd, *conj.*, *but.*
sĕdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I sit.*
sēdes, is, *f.*, *a seat.*
segnĭtĭes, ēi, *f.*, *slothfulness, indolence.*
sempĕr, *adv.*, *always, ever.*
sĕnātus, ūs, *m.*, *the senate.*
sĕnectūs, ūtis, *f.*, *old age.*
sensus, ūs, *m.*, *a sense.*
sentĭo, si, sum, 4, *I feel, perceive.*
sĕpĕlĭo, īvi or ĭi, pultum, 4, *I bury.*
sĕquor, sĕcūtus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I follow.*
sĕrēnus, a, um, *adj.*, *clear.*
sermo, ōnis, *m.*, *a discourse.*
sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3, *I plant, sow.*
servĭtūs, ūtis, *f.*, *slavery.*
servo, āvi, ātum, 1, *I preserve, save.*
servus, i, *m.*, *a slave.*
sĕvērus, a, um, *adj.*, *severe.*
sī, *conj.*, *if.*
Sĭcĭlĭa, ae, *f.*, *Sicily.*
sīdus, ĕris, *n.*, *a star, constellation.*
signum, i, *n.*, *a sign, signal.*
sĭlentĭum, ii, *n.*, *silence.*
silva, ae, *f.*, *a wood.*
sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.*, *like.* See pp. 24, 25.
sĭmŭl, *adv.*, *at the same time.*
sĭmŭlāc, sĭmŭl ac, *adv.*, *as soon as.*
sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n.*, *an image, statue.*
sĭmŭlātĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a pretence.*
sĭnĕ, *prep.* with *abl.*, *without.*
sŏcer, ĕri, *m.*, *a father-in-law.*
sŏcĭus, ii, *m.*, *a partner, ally, companion.*
Sōcrătēs, is, *m.*, *Socrates, the sage of Athens.*
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, *the sun.*
sŏlĕo, ĭtus sum, ēre, 2, *v. n.*, *I am accustomed.* See p. 85.
Sŏlon, ōnis, *m.*, *Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.*
sōlum, *adv.*, *only.*
sōlus, a, um, *adj* (*gen. sing.* īūs, *dat.* i), *alone.*
solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, 3, *I loosen, pay.*
somnus, i, *m.*, *sleep.*
sŏnĭtus, ūs, *m.*, *a sound, noise.*
sŏror, ōris, *f.*, *a sister.*
sors, tis, *f.*, *a lot.*
Sparta, ae, *f.*, *Sparta.*
spĕcĭo, *obs.*, spexi, specere, 3, *I look.*
specto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I look at, look on, behold.*
spĕcŭlor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I spy out.*
spērātus, a, um, *adj.*, *hoped for.*
spēro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I hope.*
spes, ĕi, *f.*, *hope.*
splendĭdus, a, um, *adj.*, *splendid, bright.*
splendor, ōris, *m.*, *brightness, brilliancy.*
stătim, *adv.*, *immediately.*
stătĭo, ōnis, *f.*, *a post, station.*
stătŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I fix, determine.*
stella, ae, *f.*, *a star.*
sto, stĕti, stătum, 1, *I stand.*
strēnŭē, *adv.*, *vigorously.*
strēnŭus, a, um, *adj.*, *vigorous.*
stŭdĕo, ŭi, 2, *I am eager, zealous.*
stŭdĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*, *zealous, eager after.*
stŭdĭum, ii, *n.*, *zeal, a pursuit, study.*
stultĭtĭa, ae, *f.*, *folly.*
stultus, a, um, *adj.*, *foolish.*
suādĕo, suāsi, suāsum, 2, with *dat.*, *I advise.*
suāvis, e, *adj.*, *sweet, delightful.*
sŭb, *prep.* with *abl.* or *acc.*, *beneath, under, up to*; of time, *about.*
subdiffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*, *somewhat difficult.*
subĕo, ĭi, ĭtum, 4, *I go up to, under.*
sŭbĭtus, a, um, *adj.*, *sudden.*
subsĕquor, cūtus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I follow up.*
subsum, *no perf.*, *v. irreg.*, *I am under, amongst.*
subter, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.*, *under, beneath.*

summus, a, um, *superl. adj., highest, utmost, greatest.*
sŭpĕr, *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl., over.*
sŭpĕro, āvi, ātum, 1, *I overcome.*
sŭpersum, fŭi, esse, *v. irreg., I remain over, survive.*
sŭpĕrus, a, um, *adj* (*comp.* sŭperior, *superl.* suprēmus or summus), *upper.*
suprā, *prep.* with *acc., above.*
suprēmus, a, um, *adj, superl.* of sŭpĕrus, *highest;* relat. to time, *last.*
suscĭpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I undertake.*
sŭus, a, um, *reflec. pron. poss, his, hers, its, their own.*

T

tăbernācŭlum, i, *n., a tent.*
tăcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I am silent.*
taedĕt, dŭit or pertaesum est, 2, *v. impers, it disgusts, wearies.*
tālis, e, *pron. adj., of that sort, such.*
tam, *adv., so, to such a degree.*
tantum, *adv, only.*
taurus, i, *m., a bull.*
tĕgo, texi, tectum, 3, *I cover.*
tēlum, i, *n., a dart, weapon, missile.*
tĕmĕrĭtas, ātis, *f., recklessness, rashness.*
tempestas, ātis, *f., a tempest.*
templum, i, *n., a temple.*
tempus, ŏris, *n., time.*
tĕnĕo, ŭi, tentum, 2, *I hold, retain.*
tĕner, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj., tender, soft.*
tĕnŭis, e, *adj., thin, delicate, slender.*
tĕnŭs, *prep.* with *abl., reaching to, as far as.*
terra, ae, *f., the earth, land.*
terrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I terrify, frighten, alarm.*
terror, ōris, *m., terror, alarm.*
Thăles, ētis, *m., Thales, the philosopher.*
Thĕmistŏcles, is, *m., Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*
Tĭbĕrius, ii, *m., Tiberius* (*a common Roman fore-name*).
tigris, is or ĭdis, *com., a tiger, tigress.*
tĭmĕo, ŭi, 2, *I fear.*
tĭmĭdus, a, um, *adj, timid.*
tĭmor, ōris, *m., fear.*
Tīmŏthēus, ĕi, *m., Timotheus, a famous Greek.*
Tĭtus (T.), i, *m., Titus* (*a common Roman fore-name*).
tŏnat, ŭit, āre, 1, *v. impers., it thunders.*
tōtus, a, um, *adj, whole, all.*
trabs, trăbis, *f., a beam.*
tracto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I handle, deal with.*
trādo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3, *I hand down, deliver.*
trăho, traxi, tractum, 3, *I draw, drag.*
tranquillus, a, um, *adj., calm.*
trans, *prep.* with *acc., across.*
transdūco, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead across.*
transĕo, ii, ĭtum, 4, *v. irreg., I cross over.*
Trăsĭmēnus, i, *m., the lake Trasimene in Italy.*
Trĕbōnius, ii, *m., Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.*
trĭbŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3, *I give, assign.*
tristis, e, *adj., sad.*
trĭumpho, āvi, ātum, 1, *I triumph.* See p. 132.
Trōja, ae, *f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor.*
Trōjānus, a, um, *adj., Trojan, of Troy.*
tŭĕor, tŭĭtus, 2, *v. dep., I gaze, guard, protect.*
tum, *adv.* and *conj., then.*
turpis, e, *adj., base, disgraceful.*
turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f., disgrace.*
turris, is, *f., a tower.*
tūtus, a, um, *adj., safe.*
tŭus, a, um, *poss. pron., thy, thine.*
tўrannus, i, *m., a despot, tyrant.*

U

ŭbi, *adv., where.*
ullus, a, um, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat. sing.* ī), *any.*
ultrā, *prep.* with *acc, on the farther side of, beyond.*
unquam, *adv., at any time, ever.*
ūnus, a, um, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* īŭs, *dat. sing.* ī), *one, alone.*
urbs, urbis, *f., a city.*
ŭt, *adv.* and *conj., as; that, in order that.* See p. 97.
ŭter, tră, trum, *adj.* (*gen. sing.* ĭus, *dat. sing.* ī), *which of two.*
ūtĭlis, e, *adj., useful.*
ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep.,* with *abl., I use.*
uxor, ōris, *f., a wife.*

V

vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, *I am strong, in good health.*
vălētūdo, ĭnis, *f., health.*
vălĭdus, a, um, *adj., strong.*
vallis, is, *f., a valley.*
vărius, a, um, *adj., different, various.*
vasto, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lay waste.*
vectīgăl, ālis, *n, a tax.*
vĕhĕmenter, *adv., vehemently, warmly.*
vĕho, vexi, vectum, 4, *I carry* (in pass., *I ride*).
Vēientes, um, *m. pl., the Veientes, the people of Veii, near Rome.*
vēlox, ōcis, *adj., swift.*
vĕnĕror, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I reverence, worship.*
vĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come.*
vēnor, ātus, 1, *v. dep., I hunt.*
ventĭto, āvi, 1, *v. freq., I come frequently.*
ventus, i, *m., the wind.*
Vĕnŭsia, ae, *f., Venusia, a town in Italy.*
vēr, vēris, *n., the spring.*
vĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2, *v. dep., I fear, reverence.*
vērīsĭmĭlis, e, *adj., likely, probable.*
versus, ūs, *m., a line, verse.*
versŭs, *prep.* with *acc., towards* (*only of place or direction*).
vērus, a, um, *adj., true.*
vescor, 3, *v. dep.,* with *abl., I feed, live on.*
vespĕrascit, āvit, ascĕre, *v. impers., evening approaches.*

INDEX II. TO VOCABULARIES.

ENGLISH WORDS.

apple-tree, mālus, i, *f.*
appoint, instĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3; fīo, factus sum, 3, *v. irr.*
approach, to, appropinquo, advento, āvi, ātum, 1.
arms, arma, ōrum, *n pl.*
army, exercĭtus, ūs, *m*
around, circā, circum, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*; circĭter, *adv.* [3.
arrange, instrŭo, xi, ctum,
arrive, advĕnio, pervĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
arrival, adventus, ūs, *m.*
arriving, *to be on the point of,* advento, āvi, ātum, 1.
arrow, săgitta, ae, *f.*
art, ars, rtis, *f.*
as, tam, *adv.*
as . . . as, tam . . . quam, *adv.*
as (*conj.*), ut, *conj.*
as if, quăsi, *conj.*
as far as, tĕnŭs, *prep.* with *abl.*
as soon as, sĭmŭl, sĭmŭlac.
ascertain, cognosco, nōvi, nĭtum, 3
ask, rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1.
assault, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.
assign, trĭbŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
assist, adjŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.
assistance, auxilium, ii, *n.*
assuage, mollĭo, īvi, ītum,
at, ăd, *prep.* with *acc.* [4.
Athenian, Athēniensis, e, *adj.*
Athens, Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.*
attack, impĕtus, ūs, *m.*
attack, to, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.
attain to, ădĭpiscor, eptus, 3, *v. dep.*
attempt, cōnor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
attentive, attentus, a, um, *adj.*
attentively, attentē, *adv.*
author, scriptor, ōris, *m.* [*f.*
authority, auctōrĭtas, ātis,
autumn, auctumnus, i, *m.*
awake, to be, vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.

B

bad, mălus, a, um, *adj.*
bank, rīpa, ae, *f.*
base, turpis, e, *adj.*
battle, pugna, ae, *f.*; proelium, ii, *n.*
be, to, sum, fŭi, esse, p. 29.
— **in, among,** *&c.* see compounds of sum, p. 31.
beam, trabs, trăbis, *f.*
bear, fĕro, tŭli, lātum, p. 80.
— **through,** perfĕro, etc.
beast, bestia, ae, *f.*
——, *great,* bellŭa, ae, *f.*
——, *small,* bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*
beautiful, pulcher, cra, crum, *adj.*
because, quĭă, quŏd, *conj.*
because of, ŏb, propter, *prepp.* with *acc.*
become, fīo, p. 84.
becomes, it, decet, p. 86.
before, antĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*; prae, *prep.* with *abl.*
beg, pĕto, īvi and ii, ītum, 3.
begin, incĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
beginning, ĭnĭtĭum, ii, *n.*
behalf of, on, prō, *prep.* with *abl.*
behind, pōnĕ, *prep.* with *acc.*
behoves, it, ŏportet, p. 86.
believe, crēdo, didi, ditum, 3.
beneath, sŭb, subtĕr, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
beside, praetĕr, *prep.* with *acc.*
besiege, obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
betake, confĕro, tŭli, collātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*
between, inter, *prep.* with *acc.* [*acc.*
beyond, ultrā, *prep.* with
bind, vincĭo, xi, nctum, 4.
bird, ăvis, is, *f.*
black, nĭger, gra, grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.
blame, culpo, āvi, ātum, 1.
——, *subs.,* culpa, ae, *f.*
blockade, obsĭdĭo, ōnis, *f.*
blood, sanguis, ĭnis, *m.*
bloom, flōreo, ŭi, —, 2.
blossom forth, efflōresco, flōrŭi, 3.
blow, flo, āvi, ātum, 1.
body, corpus, ŏris, *n.*
bold, audax, ācis, *adj.*
bond, vincŭlum, i, *n.*
bone, ŏs, ossis, *n.*
book, lĭber, bri, *m.*
booty, praeda, ae, *f.* [*dep.*
born, be, nascor, nātus, 3, *v.*
boundary, fīnis, is, *m.*
boy, pŭer, ĕri, *m.*
bow, arcus, ūs, *m.*
brave, fortis, e, *adj.*
bravely, fortĭtĕr, *adv.*
bridge, pons, tis, *m.*
bright, splendĭdus, a, um,
bring, fĕro, p. 80. [*adj.*
—— **in,** *&c.* see compounds of fero, p. 81.
bring to an end, fīnĭo, īvi, ītum, 4; confĭcĭo, fēci, fectum, 3.
bring forth, părio, pĕpĕri, partum, 3.
Britain, Brĭtannĭa, ae, *f.*
Briton, Brĭtannus, i, *m.*
broad, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
brother, frāter, tris, *m.* [1.
build, aedĭfĭco, āvi, ātum,
building, aedĭfĭcĭum, ii, *n.*
bull, taurus, i, *m.* [4.
bury, sĕpĕlĭo, īvi, pultum,
burden, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*
burn, *trans.,* incendo, di, sum, 3.
burn, *intrans.,* ardĕo, si, sum, 2.
burnt down, to be, dēflagro, āvi, ātum, 1.
business, nĕgōtium, ii, *n.*
busy, occŭpātus, a, um, *adj.*
but, sĕd, autem; see *Vocab.* 21, p. 130.
buy, ĕmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.
by, ā, ăb, abs, *prep.* with *abl.*

C

call, vŏco, āvi, ātum, 1.
—— **together,** convŏco, āvi, ātum, 1. [1, *v. dep.*
call to mind, rĕcordor, ātus,
calm, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*
camp, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*
can, possum, p. 76.
cannot, nĕquĕo, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, 4.
cannot but, I, făcĕre nōn possum quin. [1.
care, take, cūro, āvi, ātum,
careful, dīlĭgens, ntis, *adj.*
carefully, dīlĭgentĕr, *adv.*
carry, porto, āvi, ātum, 1.
carry on (war), gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
carry a wall, mūrum dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
Carthage, Carthāgo, ĭnis, *f.*
Carthaginian, *subs.,* Poenus, i, *m.*
Carthaginian, *adj.,* Carthāgĭnĭensis, e.
cast away, abjĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3.
cast down, dējĭcĭo, jēci, jectum; afflīgo, xi, ctum, 3.

cast forth, out, ējĭcĭo, jēci, jectum, 3.
catch, căpĭo, cēpi, captum, 3.
Catiline, Cătĭlīna, ae, *m.*
cause, causa, ae, *f.*
cavalry, ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.*
celebrated, clārus, a, um, *adj.*; nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*
century, centŭrĭa, ae, *f.*
certain, certus, a, um, *adj.*
chain, vincŭlum, i, *n.*
chance, cāsus, ūs, *m.*
——**, by,** fortĕ, cāsū.
change, mūto, āvi, ātum, 1.
charge, mando, āvi, ātum, 1.
chariot, currus, ūs, *m.*
chastise, castīgo, āvi, ātum, 1.
cheap, vīlis, e, *adj.*
cheer, exhĭlăro, āvi, ātum, 1.
cheerful, hĭlăris, e, *adj.*
cheese, cāsĕus, i, *m.*
cherish, cŏlo, ŭi, cultum, 3.
cherry, cĕrăsum, i, *n.*
cherry-tree, cĕrăsus, i, *f.*
children, lĭbĕri, ōrum, *m. pl.*
Cimbrians, Cimbri, ōrum, *m. pl.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*
citizenship, cīvĭtas, ātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
civil, *belonging to a citizen,* cīvīlis, e, *adj.*
clear, clārus, a, um, *adj.*
cloak, pallĭum, ii, *n.*
clothe, vestĭo, īvi, ītum, 4.
clothing, vestis, is, *f.*; vestīmentum, i, *n.*
cloud, nūbēs, is, *f.*
coast, ōra, ae, *f.*
cohort, cŏhors, rtis, *f.*
cold, frīgus, ŏris, *n.*
colony, cŏlōnĭa, ae, *f.*
colour, cŏlor, ōris, *m.*
come, vĕnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
—— **frequently,** ventĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.
come to pass, fīo, factus, fĭĕri; see p. 84.
commander, impĕrātor, ōris, *m.*
commission, mandātum, i, *n.*
common, vīlis, e; commūnis, e, *adj.*
commonly, fĕrē, *adv.*
commonwealth, respublĭca, reīpublĭcae, *f.*
companion, cŏmĕs, ĭtis, *c.*
comparison, in, prae, *prep.* with *acc.*
comrade, sŏcĭus, ii, *m.*
concerning, dē, *prep.* with *abl.*
confess, fătĕor, fassus; confĭtĕor, fessus, 2.
conflagration, incendĭum, ii, *n*
conquer, vinco, vīci, victum, 3.
conqueror, victor, ōris, *m.*
conscience, conscĭentĭa, ae, *f.*
conspiracy, conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.*
constellation, sīdus, ĕris, *n.*
consul, consul, ŭlis, *m.*
——**, office of,** consŭlātus, ūs, *m.*
consult, consŭlo, lŭi, ltum, 3.
consume, absūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.
contemplate, contemplor, ātus, 1, *v dep*
contented, contentus, a, um, *adj.*
continual, perpĕtŭus, a, um, *adj.*
contrary to, contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
converse, collŏquor, lŏcūtus, 3.
Corinth, Cŏrinthus, i, *f.*
correct, corrĭgo, rexi, rectum, 3.
counsel, consĭlĭum, ii, *n.*
count, nŭmĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.
countenance, vultus, ūs, *m.*
country, rūs, rūris, *n.*
——**, one's,** patrĭa, ae, *f.*
cover, tĕgo, xi, ctum, 3
cowardice, ignavĭa, ae, *f.*
create, crĕo, āvi, ātum, 1.
creator, creātor, ōris, *m.*
credible, crēdĭbĭlis, e, *adj.*
Crete, Crēta, ae, *f.*
crime, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*
crop, messis, is, *f.*; frūges, um, *f. pl.*
cross over, transĕo, 4, p. 83.
crown, cŏrōna, ae, *f.*
cruel, crūdēlis, e, *adj.*
crush, opprĭmo, pressi, pressum, 3.
cry out, clāmo, exclāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
cultivate, cŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3.
cultivate carefully, excŏlo, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3.
curb, cŏercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
current, flūmen, ĭnis, *n.*
custom, consuētūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
cut off, interclūdo, si, sum, 3.

D

dance, salto, āvi, ātum, 1.
danger, pĕrīcŭlum, i, *n.*
dangerous, pĕrīcŭlōsus, a, um, *adj.*
dare, audĕo, ausus sum, 2, p. 85.
daring, audax, ācis, *adj.*
daringly, audactĕr, *adv.*
darken, obscūro, āvi, ātum, 1.
dart, tēlum, i, *n.*
daughter, fīlĭa, ae, *f.*
day, dĭes, ēi, *m.* and *f.*
dead, mortŭus, a, um, *adj*
deal with, tracto, āvi, ātum, 1.
dear, cārus, a, um, *adj.*
death, mors, rtis, *f.*
deceive, dēcĭpĭo, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
deed, a bold, daring, făcĭnus, ŏris, *n.*
deep, altus, a, um, *adj.*
defeat, clādēs, is, *f.*
defend, dēfendo, i, sum, 3.
defendant, rĕus, i, *m.*
delicate, tĕnuis, e, *adj.*
delight, dēlecto, āvi, ātum, 1.
delightful, dulcis, suāvis, e, *adj*
delightfully, jūcundē, *adv.*
deliver, lībĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.
demand, postŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
deny, nĕgo, āvi, ātum, 1.
depart, excēdo, cessi, cessum, 3; migro, ēmigro, āvi, ātum, 1.
deplore, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
deserve, mĕrĕor, ĭtus, 2.
desire, to, cŭpĭo, īvi and ii, ītum, 3.
desire, stŭdĭum, ii, *n.*; cŭpĭdĭtas, ātis, *f.*
despise, contemno, mpsi, mptum, 3; aspernor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
despot, tÿrannus, i, *m.*
destitute, ĭnops, ŏpis, *adj.*
destroy, perdo, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3.
destruction, exĭtĭum, ii, *n.*
destructive, perniciōsus a, um, *adj.*
deter, dēterrĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
determine, constĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3.
devote oneself, ŏpĕram do, dĕdi, dătum, dăre, 1.
devoted to, addictus, a, um, *adj.*
die, mŏrĭor, mortŭus, 3.

difficult, diffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*
difficult, somewhat, subdiffĭcĭlis, e, *adj.*
dig, fŏdio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
diligence, dīligentĭa, ae, *f.*
diligent, dīligens, ntis, *adj.*
dine, coeno, āvi or ātus sum, ātum, 1, p. 85.
disaster, clādēs, is, *f.*
discern, cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
discharge, fungor, nctus, 3, *v. dep.* with *abl.*, p. 71.
discourse, sermo, ōnis, *m.*
discover, dētĕgo, texi, tectum, 3.
disease, morbus, i, *m.*
disembark, *trans.*, expōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 3
disgrace, turpĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
disgraceful, turpis, e, *adj.*
disgusts, it, taedet, 2, p 86.
dishonest, imprŏbus, a, um, *adj.*
dishonesty, fraus, dis, *f.*
dismiss, dīmitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
displease, displĭcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*
disposed, affectus, a, um, *adj.*
distance, longinquĭtas, tātis, *f.*
distant, longinquus, a, um, *adj.*
distant, to be, absum, p. 31
distinguished, insignis, e; ēgrĕgius, a, um, *adj.*
distrust, diffīdo, īsus sum, 3, p. 85.
disturb, turbo, āvi, ātum, 1; mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
ditch, fossa, ae, *f.*
divide, sēpăro, āvi, ātum, 1; dīvido, īsi, īsum, 3.
divine, dīvīnus, a, um, *adj.*
do, făcio, fēci, factum, 3.
dog, cănis, is, *c.*
doubt, dŭbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.
doubtful, dŭbius, a, um, *adj.*
dove, cŏlumba, ae, *f.*
drag, draw, trăho, traxi, tractum, 3.
draw together, contrăho, traxi, tractum, 3.
draw up in order, instrŭo, xi, ctum, 3.
drink, bĭbo, i, ĭtum, 3.
drive out, expello, pŭli, pulsum, 3.
duty, mūnus, ĕris, *n.*
dwell, hăbĭto, āvi, ātum, 1.

E

eager after, stŭdiōsus, a, um, *adj.* with *gen.*
eager, be, stŭdĕo, ŭi, —, 2.
eagle, ăquĭla, ae, *f.*
ear, auris, is, *f.*
earnestly, vĕhĕmentĕr, magnŏpĕrĕ, *adv.*
earth, terra, ae, *f.*
easily, făcĭlĕ, *adv.*
easy, făcĭlis, e, *adj.*
eat, ĕdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.
educate, ēdŭco, āvi, ātum, 1.
elegant, ēlĕgans, ntis, *adj.*
elephant, ĕlĕphantus, i, *m.*
eloquent, ēlŏquens, ntis, *adj.*
embark, nāvem (naves) conscendo, di, sum, 3.
embroider, pingo, pinxi, pictum, 3.
eminent, eximius, ēgrĕgius, a, um, *adj.*
empire, impĕrium, ii, *n.*
employ, ădhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
encourage, hortor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
end, fīnis, is, *m.*
——, **put an end to**, fīnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
endure, pătior, passus, 3; fĕro, p. 80.
enemy (*public*), hostis, is, *c.*
—— (*personal*), inĭmīcus, i, *m.* [*adj.*
engaged, occŭpātus, a, um,
enjoy, frŭor, ĭtus and ctus, 3, *v. dep.* with *abl*
enmity, inĭmīcĭtĭa, ae, *f.*
enough, sătis, *adv.*
enquire, quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3.
enter, intro, āvi, ātum, 1.
entice, lăcio, 3 (*obs.*), p. 120.
entreat, ōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
envy, invĭdĭa, ae, *f.*
epistle, ĕpistŏla, ae, *f.* [3.
esteem, dīligo, lexi, lectum,
eternal, aeternus, a, um, *adj.*
Europe, Eurōpa, ae, *f.*
even, *adj.*, aequus, a, um.
——, *conj.*, ĕtiam.
evening comes on, vespĕrascit, 3, *v. impers.*, p. 87.
ever = *at any time*, unquam, *adv.*
ever = *always*, semper, *adv.*
every, omnis, e, *adj.*
every day, quŏtīdiē, *adv.*
every one, quisque, quaeque, quodque, and *subst.* quicque (quidque), *pron.*
evident; it is, constat, stĭtit, 1.
evil, mălum, i, *n.*
example, exemplum, i, *n.*
excellent, praestans, antis praestābĭlis, e, *adj.*
except, praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*
exercise, to, exercĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2. [2.
exhibit, praebĕo, ŭi, ĭtum,
exhort, hortor, ădhortor, ātus, 1.
exile, exĭlium, ii, *n.*
——, **live in**, exĭlium ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
experienced, pĕrītus, a, um, *adj.*
extend, prōfĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, 3.
eye, ŏcŭlus, i, *m.*

F

fable, făbŭla, ae, *f.*
fall, cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 3.
faith, fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*
faithful, fīdēlis, e; fīdus, a, um, *adj.*
famous, nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*
far, longē, *adv.*
—— **and wide**, longē lātēquĕ.
farther, too far, longius, *adv. comp.*
father, păter, tris, *m.*
father-in-law, sŏcer, ĕri, [*m.*
fault, culpa, ae, *f.*
fault, find, vĭtŭpĕro, culpo, āvi, ātum, 1.
favour, grātĭa, ae, *f.*
fear, mĕtus, ūs; tĭmor, ōris, *m.*
fear, to, mĕtŭo, i, ūtum, 3; tĭmĕo, ŭi, —, 2; vĕrĕor, ĭtus, [2.
feeble, dēbĭlis, e, *adj*
feed on, vescor, with *abl.*, 3, *v. dep.*
feel, sentĭo, si, sum, 4.
feign, sĭmŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
fellow-citizen, cīvis, is, *c.*
fellow-soldier, commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.*
few, paucus, a, um, *adj.*
fidelity, fĭdes, ĕi, *f.*
field, ăger, gri, *m.*
fierce, fĕrox, ōcis, *adj.*
fiery, *made of fire*, ignĕus, a, um, *adj.*
fig, fig-tree, fīcus, i, *f.*
fight, pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.

hope, spēs, ĕi, *f.*
hoped for, spērātus, a, um, *adj.*
horn, cornū, ūs, *n.*
horse, ĕquus, i, *m.*
horse-soldier, ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.*
hostage, obsĕs, ĭdis, *c.*
hour, hōra, ae, *f.*
house, dŏmus, ūs; *see* p. 22.
how great, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*
how many, quŏt, *indecl rel adj.*
human, hūmānus, a, um, *adj*
hunger, fămĕs, is, *f.*
hunt, vēnor, ātus, 1.
hurt, harm, nŏcĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*; obsum, with *dat*, p. 31.
hurtful, noxius, a, um, *adj*
hurtful, to be, obsum, with *dat.*, p. 31.
husbandman, agrĭcŏla, ae, *m*

I

if, sī, *conj*
if, as, quasi, *conj.*
ignorance, ignōrātiō, ōnis, *f.*
ignorant of (be), ignōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
ill, *adj*, mălus, a, um, *adj.*
—, *adv.*, mălè, *adv.*
illness, morbus, i, *m.*
ill-will, invĭdia, ae, *f.*
ill-wishing, mălĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj*
image, imāgo, ĭnis, *f.*, sĭmŭlācrum, i, *n*
imitate, imitor, ātus, 1, *v dep.*
immediately, stătim, *adv.*
immense, ingens, tis, *adj.*
immortal, immortālis, e, *adj.*
immortality, immortālĭtas, ātis, *f.*
impair, infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3.
impiety, impious, nĕfas, *n. indec.*
improve, ēmendo, āvi, ātum, 1.
imprudence, imprūdentĭa, ae, *f.*
in, into, in, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
indeed, quĭdem, *conj.*
indolence, ignāvia, ae; sĕgnĭtĭēs, ēi, *f.*
indolently, ignāvē, *adv.*
indulge, indulgĕo, si, tum, 2, with *dat.*
industrious, industrĭus, a, um, *adj.*
infamous, infāmis, e, *adj.*
infamy, infāmĭa, ae, *f.*
infantry, pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.*
inferior, infĕrior, ius, *adj. comp.*
infinite, infīnītus, a, um, *adj.*
infirm, dĕbĭlis, e, *adj.*
inhabitant, incŏla, ae, *c.*
injure, obsum, obfŭi or offŭi, obesse, with *dat*, p. 31; nŏceo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2, with *dat.*
injurious, noxĭus, a, um, *adj.*
innumerable, innŭmĕrus, a, um, *adj.*
inquire, rŏgo, āvi, ātum, 1; quaero, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 3.
insect, bestĭŏla, ae, *f.*
institute, instĭtŭo, ŭi, ūtum, 3
instrument, instrūmentum, i, *n.*
integrity, prŏbĭtas, ātis, *f.*
intellect, mens, tis, *f.*
intercept, intercludo, si, sum, 3.
invent, rĕpĕrio, pĕri, pertum, 4; fingo, finxi, fictum, 3.
iron, ferrum, i, *n.*
island, insŭla, ae, *f.*
Italy, Ĭtălĭa, ae, *f.*
its, sŭus, a, um, *poss. pron.*

J

join, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
—— **(battle),** proelium committo, mīsi, missum, 3.
journey, ĭter, ĭtinĕris, *n.*
joy, gaudĭum, ii, *n.*
joyful, laetus, a, um, *adj.*
judge, jūdex, ĭcis, *m.*
——, **to,** jūdĭco, āvi, ātum, 1.
judgment, jūdĭcĭum, ii, *n.*
just, justus, a, um, *adj.*
justly, justē, *adv*

K

keen, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*
keep off, prŏhĭbĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
keep guard, vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
kill, interfĭcio, fēci, fectum, 3.
kind, bĕnignus, a, um, *adj.*
kindly, bĕnignē, *adv.*
king, rex, rēgis, *m.*
——, **to be,** regno, āvi, ātum, 1.
kingdom, regnum, i, *n.*
knee, gĕnu, ūs, *m.*
know, scio, īvi and ii, ītum, 4.
know not, nescio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.
knowledge, scientĭa, prūdentĭa, ae, *f.*
knowledge, without, clam, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*
known, nōtus, a, um, *adj.*

L

labour, lăbor, ōris, *m.*
lake, lăcus, ūs, *m.*
lament over, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, 1.
land, terra, ae, *f.*; ăger, gri, *m.*
language, lingua, ae, *f.*
large, magnus, a, um, *adj*
last day, suprēmus dĭēs, *m*
last, at, dēmum, *adv.*
Latin, Lătinus, a, um, *adj.*
law, lex, lēgis, *f.*
lay waste, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.
lay siege to, obsĭdĕo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
lead, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.
—— **across,** transdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
lead out, ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.
leader, dux, dŭcis, *c.*
learn, disco, dĭdĭci, —, 3.
learn in addition, addisco, didĭci, 3.
learn = *ascertain*, cognosco, nōvi, nitum, 3.
learned, doctus, a, um, *adj.*
leave, rĕlinquo, līqui, lictum, 3.
leg, crūs, ūris, *n.*
legion, lĕgio, ōnis, *f.*
length, longĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.*
lest, nē, p. 97.
lest, and, nĕvĕ.
letter of the alphabet, lĭtĕra, ae, *f.*
letter (*an epistle*), lĭtĕrae, ārum, *f. pl.*; ĕpistŏla, ae, *f.*
letters, literature, lĭtĕrae, ārum, *f. pl.*
levy, dēlectus, ūs, *m.*
liar, lying, mendax, ācis, *subs.* and *adj.*
lictor, lictor, ōris, *m.*
lie (*on the ground*), jăcĕo, ŭi, —, 2.

lie (*to speak falsely*), mentior, itus, 4, *v. dep.*
lieutenant, lēgātus, i, *m.*
life, vita, ae, *f.*
light (*adj.*), lĕvis, e, *adj.*
light (*subs.*), lux, lūcis, *f.*
light, it becomes, lūcescit, 3, *impers. v.*, p. 87.
lightning, fulmen, inis, *n.*
like, similis, e, *adj.*
likely, vērīsimĭlis, e, *adj.*
likeness, imāgo, inis, *f.*
limit, fīnis, *m.*
——**, to,** fīnio, īvi, ītum, 4.
line of battle, ăciēs, ēi, *f.*
lion, lĕo, ōnis, *m.*
little, parvus, a, um, *adj.*
live, vīvo, vixi, victum, 3.
live on, vescor, with *abl.*, 3, *v. dep.*
live in exile, exilium ăgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
Livy, Livius, ii, *m.*
load, ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*
lofty, celsus, a, um, *adj.*
long (*adj.*), longus, a, um, [*adj.*
long (*adv.*), diū, *adv.*
look at, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.
—— **upon** or **into,** intuĕor, tuitus and tūtus, 2, *v. dep.*
looks, vultus, ūs, *m.*
loosen, solvo, solvi, sŏlūtum, 3.
lord, dŏmĭnus, i, *m.*
lot, sors, rtis, *f.*
love, ămo, āvi, ātum, 1; dīligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
love in return, rĕdămo, āvi, ātum, 1.
lovely, ămābĭlis, e, *adj.*
low, hŭmilis, e, *adj.*
lower, infĕrior, ius, *adj. comp.*
luckily, fēlīcĭtĕr, *adv.*
lucky, fēlix, īcis, *adj.*

M

Macedonian, Măcĕdo, dŏnis, *m.*
made, factus, affectus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*
made of fire, ignĕus, a, um, *adj.*
madness, fŭror, ōris, *m.*
magistrate, măgistrātus, ūs, *m.*
magnificent, magnĭfĭcus, a, um, *adj.*
maiden, virgo, inis, *f.*
maintain, servo, āvi, ātum, 1.
make, făcio, fēci, factum, 3
man, hŏmo, inis, *c.*; vir, viri, *m.*
manage, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
manifest, manifestus, a, um, *adj.*
maniple, manĭpŭlus, i, *m.*
manner, mos, mōris, *m.*
many, multus, a, um, *adj.*
many, how, quŏt, *indec. rel. adj.*
many, very, permulti, ae, a, *adj.*
marble, marmŏr, ŏris, *n.*
market-place, fŏrum, i, *n*
master, dŏmĭnus, i, *m.*; măgister, tri, *m.*
measure, to, mētior, mensus, 4, *v. dep.*
meditate, mĕditor, ātus, 1, [*v. dep.*
meet, to, obeo, ivi and ii, ĭtum, 4.
mellow, mollis, e, *adj.*
membrane, membrāna, ae, *f.*
memorable, mĕmŏrābĭlis, e, *adj.*
memory, mĕmŏrĭa, ae, *f*
metal, mĕtallum, i, *n.* [1.
migrate, migro, āvi, ātum,
mild, mītis, e, *adj.*
milk, lac, lactis, *n.*
mind, mens, ntis, *f.*
mindful, mĕmor, ŏris, *adj.*
miserable, miser, ĕra, ĕrum, *adj*
mistake, error, ōris, m.
——**, make a,** erro, āvi, ātum, 1.
mistress, dŏmĭna, ae, *f.*
money, pĕcūnia, ae, *f.*
month, mensis, is, *m.*
monument, mŏnŭmentum, [i, *n.*
moon, lūna, ae, *f.*
more, plus, plūris, *neut. adj*; in *pl.* plūres, a.
mortal, mortālis, e, *adj.*
mother, māter, tris, *f.*
mound, agger, ĕris, *m.*
mount, to, conscendo, di, sum, 3.
mountain, mons, ntis, *m.*
mouth, ōs, ōris, *n.*
move, mŏveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.
much, multus, a, um, *adj*
multitude, multĭtūdo, inis, *f.*
my (mine), meus, a, um, *poss. pron.*

N

name, nōmen, inis, *n.*
narrow, angustus, a, um, *adj.*
native-land, patria, ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, ae, *f.*
naval, nāvālis, e, *adj.*
near to (*prep.*), prŏpe, *adv.*
near (*adj.*), prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj.*
necessary, nĕcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
necessity, nĕcessitas, ātis, *f.*
need, ŏpus, *indec. subs.*, with *abl.* and *adj.*
needful, nĕcessārius, a, um, *adj.*
needle, ăcus, ūs, *f.*
neither, neuter, tra, trum, *indef. pron.*
neither, nor, nĕquĕ, nec, *conj.*
nest, nīdus, i, *m.*
net, rēte, is, *n.*
never, nunquam, *adv.*
new, nŏvus, a, um, *adj.*
next, proximus, a, um, *adj. sup.*
night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nightingale, luscinia, ae, *f.*
no, none, nullus, a, um, *indef. pron.*
noble, nōbĭlis, e, *adj.*
nobody, no one, nēmo, inis, *c.*
not, nōn, haud, *adv.*
nothing, nihil, *indec. subs.*
nourish, nūtrio, īvi, ītum, 4.
now, nunc, jam, *adv*
number, nŭmĕrus, i, *m.*
nurture, nutrio, īvi, ītum, 4.

O

oak, quercus, ūs, *f.*
oath, jusjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, *n.*
obey, pāreo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2; ŏbēdio, īvi, ītum, 4, with *dat.*
object, rĕcūso, āvi, ātum, 1.
obscure, obscūrus, a, um, *adj.*
observe (*carefully*), contemplor, atus, 1, *v. dep.*
obtain, păro, āvi, ātum, 1; ădipiscor, adeptus, 3, *v. dep.*
obtain possession of, pŏtior, ītus, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*
ocean, ŏcĕănus, i, *m.*
often, saepĕ, *adv.*
——**, very,** saepissĭmē, *adv.*
oftentimes, saepĕnŭmĕrō, *adv.*
old, sĕnex, sĕnis (of persons only); vĕtus, ĕris, *adj.*

use, to, ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*
useful, ūtĭlis, e, *adj.*
utmost, summus, a, um, *sup. adj.*

V

valley, vallis, is, *f.*
valour, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
various, vărĭus, a, um, *adj.*
vehemently, vĕhĕmentĕr, *adv.*
verse, versus, ūs, *m.*
vex, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.
vexes, it, piget, p. 86. [*f.*
victim, hostĭa, victĭma, ae,
victory, victōrĭa, ae, *f.*
vigorous, strēnŭus, a, um, *adj.*
vigorously, strēnŭē, *adv.*
virtue, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*
visit, to, vīso, si, sum, 3.
voice, vox, vōcis, *f.*
vulture, vultŭr, ŭris, *m.*

W

wage (war), to, gĕro, gessi, gestum, 3.
wake (*intrans.*), vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
walk, take a walk, ambŭlo, āvi, ātum, 1.
wall, mūrus, i, *m.* [p. 31.
wanting, to be, dēsum,
war, bellum, i, *n.* [*adj.*
warlike, bellĭcōsus, a, um,
warm, călĭdus, a, um, *adj.*
warn, mŏnĕo, ŭi, ĭtum, 2.
waste, to lay, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1. [1.
watch, to, vĭgĭlo, āvi, ātum,
water, ăqua, ae, *f.*
——, **to fetch,** ăquor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
way, in that, tā, *adv.*
——, **to be in the,** obsum, p. 31. [*f.*
weakness, infirmĭtas, ātis,
wealthy, ŏpŭlentus, a, um,
weapon, tēlum, i, *n.* [*adj.*
wearies, it, taedet, p. 86.
weep, flĕo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
well, bĕnĕ, *adv.* [2.
——, **to be,** vălĕo, ŭi, ĭtum,
wellwishing, bĕnĕvŏlus, a, um, *adj.*
west, occĭdens, entis, *m.*
whale, bālaena, ae, *f.*
what, quis, quae, quid and quŏd, *interrog.* and *indef. pron.*
what sort, of, quālis, e, *rel. adj.*
when, quando, *interr. adv.*; quum, *adv.* and *conj.*
whether, utrum, *conj.*
which of two, ŭter, tra, trum, *adj. pron.*
while, dum, *adv.*
whilst drinking, inter bĭbendum.
white, albus, a, um, *adj.*
whither, quō, *rel. adv.*
who, quī, quae, quŏd, *rel. pron.*; quis, quae, quid or quŏd, *inter. pron.*
whole, tōtus, a, um, *adj.*
why, cūr, quār
wicked, impr[illegible], um nēquam, *indec. a*[illegible]
wickedness, scĕlus, ĕris, *n.*
wide, lātus, a, um, *adj.*
widely, lātē, *adv.*
wife, uxor, ōris, *f.*; mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, *f.*
wilful, perversus, a, um, *adj.*
willing, to be, vŏlo, p. 77.
———, **to be more,** mālo, p. 77.
win, ădĭpiscor, adeptus, 3, *v. dep.*; păro, āvi, ātum, 1.
win upon, blandĭor, ītus, 4,
wind, ventus, i, *m.* [*v. dep.*
wine, vīnum, i, *n.*
wing, āla, ae, *f.*
winter, hĭems, ĕmis, *f.*
———, **of,** hībernus, a, um, *adj.*
winter, to, hĭĕmo, āvi, ātum, 1.
winter quarters, hīberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*
wisdom, săpientĭa, ae, *f.*
wise, săpiens, entis, *adj.*
wish, vŏluntās, ātis, *f.*
wish, to, opto, āvi, ātum, 1; vŏlo, p. 77.
within, intrā, *prep.* with *acc.*
woman, fēmĭna, ae, *f.*; mŭlĭĕr, ĕris, *f.* [*v. dep.*
wonder at, mīror, ātus, 1,
wonderful, mīrus, mīrābĭlis, e, *adj.*
wood, silva, ae, *f.*
work, ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*
world, mundus, i, *m.*
worship, to, vĕnĕror, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*
wound, vulnus, ĕris, *n.*
———, **to,** vulnĕro, āvi, ātum, 1.
wretched, mĭsĕr, ĕrā, ĕrum, *adj.*
write, to, scrībo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.
writer, scrīptor, ōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, i, *m.*
yesterday, hĕrī, *adv.*
yield, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
your, tŭus, a, um; vester, tra, trum, *poss. pron.*
youth, jŭventūs, ūtis, *f.*
—— (*a young man or woman*), jŭvĕnis, is, *c.*

Z

zeal, stŭdĭum, ii, *n.*
zealous, stŭdĭōsus, a, um, *adj.*
zealous, to be, stŭdĕo, ŭi, 2, with *dat.*

LONDON: PRINTED BY WM. CLOWES AND SONS, STAMFORD STREET AND CHARING CROSS.

ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.
June, 1876.

MR. MURRAY'S
LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

THE STUDENT'S MANUALS:

A Series of Class-books for advanced Scholars.

FORMING A CHAIN OF HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST AGES DOWN TO MODERN TIMES.

"The 'STUDENT'S MANUALS,' edited for the most part by DR. WM. SMITH, possess several distinctive features which render them singularly valuable as educational works. While there is an utter absence of flippancy in them, there is thought in every page, which cannot fail to excite thought in those who study them, and we are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of teachers *to these admirable school-books.*"—*The Museum.*

THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY. With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST. From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY. A HISTORY of the CHRISTIAN CHURCH from the EARLIEST TIMES to the EVE OF THE PROTESTANT REFORMATION. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 100 Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

*** *Questions on the "Student's Greece."* 12*mo.* 2*s.*

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With 80 Woodcuts. (686 pp.) Post 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Continued.